## $\square$ YAESU

## MARK-V ${ }_{\text {ft-1000MP }}$

## HF TRANSCEIVER <br> Operating Manual

Downloaded by<br>RadioAmateur.EU



[^0]General Description ..... 1
Specifications ..... 3
Plug/Connector Pinout Diagrams ..... 4
Accessories \& Options .....  5
Supplied Accessories .....  5
Available Options .....  6
Safety Precautions ..... 7
Power Connections .....  7
Ground Connections ..... 7
Electrical Shock Prevention ..... 8
Antenna Precautions .....  8
RF Field Exposure Advisory \& Electromagnetic Compatibility ..... 8
General Setup ..... 9
Preliminary Inspection ..... 9
Power Connections ..... 9
Transceiver Location ..... 9
Grounding .....  9
Antenna Considerations ..... 10
Adjusting the Front Feet ..... 10
Memory Backup ..... 10
Accessory Installation ..... 11
Linear Amplifier Interfacing ..... 11
Transverter Operation ..... 14
Digital Modem (TNC, WeatherFax, etc.) Interfacing ..... 15
Other Digital/Recording Device Interfacing ..... 19
CW Key/Paddle and Computer Keying Interface suggestions ..... 19
Antenna Connections ..... 20
Personal Computer Int ..... 21
Front Panel Controls ..... 22
LCD Bargraph Meter Indications ..... 30
Top Panel Access \& Controls ..... 32
Rear Panel Controls \& Connectors ..... 34
Operation ..... 36
Before Starting ..... 36
MARK-V FT-1000MP Menu Programming ..... 36
Receiving ..... 36
Amateur Band Selection ..... 36
Mode Selection ..... 37
Tuning the MARK-V FT-1000MP ..... 38
Alternate VFO Operation ("Front \& Rear" VFO) ..... 40
VFO Selection \& Receiver Muting. ..... 40
Keypad Frequency Entry ..... 40
Signal Tuning Meter Indications ..... 41
Expanded Tuning Scale. ..... 42
AM Synchronous Tuning ..... 42
Sub-Display Modes Sellection ..... 42
General Coverage Reception ..... 43
Dealing with Interference ..... 44
VRF (Variable RF Front-end Filter) ..... 44
Front End Selections: Amp Selection, IPO \& ATT ..... 44
AGC (Automatic Gain Control) Selection ..... 45
Noise Blanker ..... 46
IF Filter (Bandwidth) Selection ..... 46
WIDTH Control ..... 47
SHIFT Control ..... 48
Notch Filter ..... 48
Clarifier (Rx/Tx Offset Tuning) ..... 49
Offset Display Mode ..... 50
Transmitting ..... 51
Selecting Antennas ..... 51
Automatic Antenna Matching ..... 51
SSB Transmission ..... 52
Transmitter Monitor ..... 52
Microphone Tone Selection ..... 53
RF Speech Processor ..... 53
Class-A Operation ..... 53
VOX Operation ..... 54
CW Transmission ..... 54
Straight-Key Operation ..... 54
Electronic Keyer Operation ..... 55
ACS (Auto Character Spacing) ..... 53
Keyer Settings ..... 56
CW Pitch Setting and Spot Tone ..... 56
AM Transmission ..... 57
Digital Mode Operation ..... 57
RTTY Operation ..... 57
Packet Operation ..... 58
1200-Baud FM Packet ..... 58
FM Transmission ..... 59
Using SUB VFO B ..... 60
Dual Reception ..... 60
Split Frequency Operation ..... 62
Sideband Diversity Reception ..... 63
Bandwidth Diversity Reception ..... 63
VFO Tracking ..... 63
Memory Features ..... 64
Memory Structure ..... 64
Memory Programming ..... 65
Copying VFO-A Data to Selected Memory ..... 65
Recalling \& Operating on Memory Channels ..... 66
Memory Tuning ..... 66
Copying a Selected Memory to VFO-A ..... 67
Copying between Memories ..... 67
Grouping Memories ..... 67
Limiting Memory Group Operation ..... 67
QMB (Quick Memory Bank) Operation ..... 68
Scanning Features ..... 69
VFO Scanning ..... 69
Memory Scanning ..... 69
Memory Scan Skip ..... 69
Memory "Masking" ..... 70
Scan Resume Mode ..... 70
Scan Skip Disable ..... 70
Programmed Memory Scanning (PMS Memories P1 ~ P9) .. 71
Advanced Features ..... 72
EDSP ..... 72
EDSP Functions ..... 73
EDSP RX Audio Enhancement ..... 73
EDSP Noise Reducer ..... 74
EDSP APF (Audio Peak Filter) ..... 74
IDBT (Interlocked Digital Bandwidth Tracking) System ..... 74
EDSP Auto Multiple Notch Filter ..... 74
Remote Control Operation ..... 76
Introduction ..... 76
I. Contest Keyer Control ..... 76
II. VFO/Memory Control ..... 79
III. MAIN VFO-A Control ..... 79
IV. SUB VFO-B Control ..... 79
User-Customized Operating Mode ..... 80
Optional DVS-2 Digital Voice Recorder ..... 81
Overview ..... 81
Installation ..... 81
DVS-2 Controls ..... 81
Message Recording (from MAIN or SUB Receiver Audio) ..... 82
Playback (on the Air of Recorded Receiver Audio) ..... 82
Message Recording (from Microphone Audio) ..... 82
Message Monitor (Playback Without Transmitting) ..... 83
Message Transmission ("On the Air" Playback) ..... 83
Phone Patch Operation ..... 84
Tuning Meter Re-Calibration ..... 85
CW Tuning ..... 85
RTTY Tuning ..... 85


Congratulations on the purchase of your Yaesu amateur transceiver! Whether this is your first rig, or if Yaesu equipment is already the backbone of your station, rest assured that your transceiver will provide many hours of operating pleasure for years to come.

The MARK-V FT-1000MP is an elite-class HF transceiver providing exceptional performance both on transmit and receive. The MARK-V FT-1000MP is designed for the most competitive operating situations, whether you primarily operate in contest, DX, or digital-mode environments.

Built on the foundation of the popular FT-1000MP transceiver, the MARK-V FT-1000MP provides up to 200 Watts of power output on SSB, CW, and FM (50 Watts AM carrier). Additionally, a Yaesu-exclusive "Class-A" SSB operating mode provides ultra-linear signal output, at a power output level of up to 75 Watts.

Also new on the MARK-V FT-1000MP is the IDBT (Interlocked Digital Bandwidth Tracking) System, which automatically aligns the bandwidth of the Enhanced Digital Signal Processing (EDSP) receiver passband to match the IF filter passband. This improves operating efficiency by removing the extra step of making separate analog and DSP filter adjustments. This feature can be enabled or disabled with the press of a button, for maximum flexibility.

And for exceptional protection from strong nearby incoming signals, the new, Yaesu-exclusive VRF (Variable RF Front-End Filter) serves as a high-performance Preselector-ideal for multi-operator contest environments. This filter is manually tuned, allowing the operator to optimize sensitivity or signal rejection with the twist of a knob.

In addition to the contribution of the VRF Preselector, superb receiver performance is a result of direct lineage from the legendary FT-1000D and FT-1000MP. New technology Direct Digital Synthesizers (two 10-bit and three 8-bit) are used in the local oscillator (all driven by a single TCXO master oscillator), resulting in extremely fine tuning resolution with thirteen selectable tuning steps down to 0.625 Hz . You may select either "Flat" or "Tuned" front end RF amplification (using four FETs in a double push-pull, constant-gain stage), IPO (Intercept Point Optimization) utilizing direct feed to the first mixer, and/or three levels of RF attenuation in 6dB steps. The "Tuned" RF Preamplifier provides high gain and low noise figure on the higher frequency bands, with lower gain and greater selectivity on the low bands, where strong-signal performance is critically important.

To battle QRM, the MARK-V FT-1000MP comes equipped with a formidable defense. Fine tailoring of the IF passband is made possible with individually-selected, cascaded 2nd- and 3rd-IF crystal filter banks. World-renowned Collins ${ }^{\circledR}$ mechanical $500-\mathrm{Hz}$ CW filters are available as options for the Sub Receiver 2nd IF, and main receiver 3rd IF strip. An IF notch filter and concentric IF Shift and Width controls are also provided. The IF Width circuit allows continuously narrowing receiver passband by selectively moving either the upper or lower filter skirt just as much as needed to reduce QRM while still preserving the maximum usable bandwidth. This extensive analog IF filtering protects the EDSP circuits that follow it, ensuring unmatched performance during crowded band conditions.

## General Description

Yaesu's Enhanced Digital Signal Processing (EDSP) circuitry, pioneered in the FT-1000MP, provides a wide array of interference-rejection and signalcustomization features. On receive, three different signal "Contour" enhancements, in addition to narrowbandwidth peaking filters for CW and Data modes, help dig out weak signals from the noise. Combined with the EDSP Auto-Notch and Noise Reduction circuits, the IF analog filters and EDSP response Contours are without peer in the Amateur Radio industry for signal enhancement. On transmit, the EDSP Microphone Equalizer allows matching of the transmitter's audio response to your voice's pattern, thereby maximizing useful power output in the SSB envelope.

Advanced features include Dual Receive, Direct Keyboard Frequency Entry and Band Change, RF Speech Processor, RF Monitor for Voice modes, CW Pitch control, CW Spot switch, Full CW QSK, adjustable IF Noise Blanker, Synchronous Tuning for AM, and all-mode Squelch. And the Yaesu-exclusive Shuttle-Jog tuning ring provides a spring-loaded manual scanning tool, perfect for sweeping across a band as you take a quick look for activity.

Frequency setup is extraordinarily simple on the MARK-V FT-1000MP. Besides direct frequency entry for both the Main and Sub VFOs, separate keys are provided for band selection, and each band key accesses two independent VFO frequency/mode/filter settings per band, so you can establish separate VFO settings for two different parts of each band. The Sub VFO has its own banks of VFOs for each band, and you may copy frequencies from the Main to the Sub VFO, or swap frequencies between the two, with a single button push. The two VFOs allow simultaneous reception and display of two different frequencies, even in different modes and with different IF bandwidths. Receiver audio can be completely or partially mixed, or monitored separately in each ear.

In addition, 99 scannable memories are provided, each of which stores its own mode and IF filter selection, in addition to frequency, Clarifier offset, and scanskip status. What's more, five quick-recall ("QMB") memories can instantly store operational settings at the push of a button.

The built-in automatic antenna tuner includes 39 memories of its own, automatically storing antenna matching settings for quick automatic recall later.

A unique feature of the MARK-V FT-1000MP is the rear panel's "REMOTE" jack, a multi-featured port which allows a number of possible control functions. When connected to the optional FH-1 Keypad (or a home-made keypad), the REMOTE jack may be used as a control pad for the contest message keyer, or for memory/VFO control of the Main or Sub receiver.

Interfacing for digital modes is extremely simple with the MARK-V FT-1000MP, thanks to dedicated AFSK and FSK connection jacks on the rear panel. Optimization of the filter passbands, EDSP settings, carrier insertion point, and display offset are all possible via the Menu programming system.

The Yaesu CAT system provides a direct link to the transceiver CPU for computer control and customization of tuning, scanning and other operating functions. The MARK-V FT-1000MP includes a builtin data level converter for direction connection to a personal computer serial port. Yaesu products are supported by most all of the leading contest and DX logging programs, and the programming protocol is included in this manual, if you wish to write your own software!

Special options for the MARK-V FT-1000MP include the TCXO-6 Temperature Compensated Crystal Oscillator module, and a wide selection of IF filters to complement the four already installed as standard. External options include the DVS-2 Digital Voice Recorder; SP-8 External Loudspeaker with optional LL-7 Phone Patch module; YH-77STA Stereo Headset; FH1 Remote Control Keypad; and the MD-100asx Desktop Microphone. Rounding out your Yaesu station, the VL-1000 1 KW Linear Amplifier is specifically designed to match your MARK-V FT-1000MP, providing the convenience of fully automatic band change along with 1000 Watts of clean power output.

For safe transportation of the MARK-VFT-1000MP, a supplied separate power, the FP-29, provides the 30 Volt and 13.8 Volt power required for 200-Watt operation. The reduced weight inside the transceiver case provides a greater safety margin during the shipment your MARK-V FT-1000MP via a parcel service, or when checking it as baggage for a DX-pedition.

Advanced technology is only part of the MARK-V FT-1000MP story. Yaesu stands behind our products with a worldwide network of dealers and service centers. We greatly appreciate your investment in the MARK-V FT-1000MP, and we look forward to helping you get the most out of your new transceiver. Please feel free to contact your nearest dealer, or one of Yaesu's national headquarters offices, for technical advice, interfacing assistance, or accessory recommendation. And watch Yaesu U.S.A.'s Home Page for late-breaking information about Yaesu products: http:/ /www.yaesu.com.

Please read this manual thoroughly, so as to gain maximum understanding of the full capability of the MARK-V FT-1000MP, simply the finest Amateur Radio transceiver available today!

## General

Rx Frequency Range:
Tx Frequency Ranges:
Frequency Stability:
Operating Temperature Range:
Emission Modes:
Frequency Steps:
Antenna Impedance:
$100 \mathrm{kHz}-30 \mathrm{MHz}$
160-10m (Amateur bands only)
$\pm 0.5 \mathrm{ppm}$ (after 1 min . @ $25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ )
$\pm 0.25 \mathrm{ppm}$ (after 1 min . @ $25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, w/TCXO-6)
$-10^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \sim+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
LSB, USB, CW, FSK, AFSK, AM, FM
0.625/1.25/2.5/5/10 Hz for SSB,CW, RTTY \& Packet;

100 Hz for AM and FM
50 Ohms, unbalanced
16.6-150 Ohms, unbalanced (Tuner ON, TX only)

## Power Consumption:

Supply Voltage:
Dimensions (WHD):
Weight (approx.):

## Transmitter

Power Output:
Duty Cycle:
Modulation Types:
Maximum FM Deviation:
FSK Shift Frequencies:
Packet Shift Frequencies:
Harmonic Radiation:
SSB Carrier Suppression:
13.8 VDC 30 VDC

Rx (no signal) $\quad 2.3 \mathrm{~A}$ -
Rx (signal) 2.7 A -
Tx (200 W) 2.2 A 14.5A
30 VDC and 13.8 VDC (FP-29)
$410 \times 135 \times 347 \mathrm{~mm}(16 \times 5.3 \times 13.7$ inch $)$
14 kg . (31 lbs)

Adjustable up to 200 watts ( 50 watts AM carrier), Class A mode (SSB): 75 watts maximum
100\% @ 100 watts, 50\% @ 200 watts (FM \& RTTY, 3-minute Tx)
SSB: J3E Balanced, AM: A3E Low-level (early stage),
FM: F3E Variable reactance, AFSK: J1D, J2D Audio frequency shift keying $\pm 2.5 \mathrm{kHz}$
170, 425, and 850 Hz
200 and 1000 Hz
Better than -60 dB (Typical)
At least 40 dB below peak output
Undesired Sideband Suppression: At least 55 dB below peak output
Audio Response (SSB): $\quad$ Not more than -6 dB from 400 to 2600 Hz
3rd-order IMD:

Microphone Impedance:
Receiver
Circuit Type:
Intermediate Frequencies:
Sensitivity:

Selectivity (-6/-60 dB):

IF Rejection (1.8~30 MHz):
Image Rejection ( $1.8 \sim 30 \mathrm{MHz}$ ):
Maximum Audio Output:
Audio Output Impedance:
-31 dB @ 200 watts PEP, or better
Class A mode: -50 dB @ 75 watts PEP (Typical)
500 to 600 Ohms

Quad-conversion superheterodyne (triple conversion for FM)
Main Rx; 70.455 MHz/8.215 MHz/455 kHz, Sub Rx; 47.21 MHz/455 kHz

| Modes | $0.5-1.8 \mathrm{MHz}$ | $1.8-30 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SSB/CW $(2.0 \mathrm{kHz})$ | $2 \mu \mathrm{~V}$ | $0.16 \mu \mathrm{~V}$ |
| AM $(6 \mathrm{kHz})$ | $13 \mu \mathrm{~V}$ | $2 \mu \mathrm{~V}$ |
| FM | - | $0.5 \mu \mathrm{~V}$ |

(with preamp on, IDBT on, SSB/CW/AM for 10 dB S/N, FM for 12 dB SINAD, $0 \mathrm{~dB} \mu=1 \mu \mathrm{~V}$ )

| Band Width | Modes | Minimum -6 dB BW | Maximum -60 dB BW |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2.4 kHz | all except FM | 2.2 kHz | 4.2 kHz |
| 2.0 kHz | all except FM | 1.8 kHz | 3.6 kHz |
| 500 Hz | CW/RTTY/Packet | 500 Hz | 1.8 kHz |
| 250 Hz | CW/RTTY/Packet | 250 Hz | 700 Hz |
|  | AM (Wide) | 4 kHz | 14 kHz |
|  | FM | 8 kHz | 19 kHz |

80 dB or better (Main Rx), 60 dB or better (Sub Rx)
80 dB or better (Main), 50 dB or better (Sub)
2.0 W into 4 Ohms with $<10 \%$ THD

4 to 8 Ohms

Specifications are subject to change, in the interest of technical improvement, without notice or obligation.

## Plug/Connector Pinout Diagrams

| MIC | DC IN |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (1) UP <br> (2) +5 V <br> (3) DOWN <br> (4) FAST <br> (5) GND <br> (6) PTT <br> (7) MIC GND <br> (as viewed from front panel) <br> (8) MIC | (as viewed from rear | (1) $(30 \mathrm{~V}) \mathrm{GND}$ <br> (2) $(13.8 \mathrm{~V}) \mathrm{GND}$ <br> (3) N/A <br> (4) +30 V <br> (5) +13.8 V <br> (6) N/A |
| BAND DATA | DVS-2 |  |
|  | (as viewed from rear p | (1) VOICEIN <br> (2) VOICE OUT <br> (3) PTT <br> (4) +9 V <br> (5) CNTL 1 <br> (6) CNTL 2 <br> (7) GND <br> ) |
| PACKET | RTTY |  |
| (1) DATA IN <br> (2) GND <br> (3) PTT <br> (4) DATA OUT <br> (5) BUSY <br> (as viewed from rear panel) |  |  |
| CNT | PHONE |  |
|  |  |  |
|  | REMOTE/EXT SPKR |  |
| Internal Keyer <br> Straight Key |  |  |
|  | AF OUT | RCA PLUG |
|  |  |  |

## Accessories \& Options

## Supplied Accessories

AC Power Supply FP-29 and its accessories (Separate Carton) ..... 1
Hand Microphone MH-31bs (depending on transceiver version) ..... 1
RCA Plug (P0090544) ..... 1
1/4-inch 3-contact Plug (P0090008) ..... 1
3.5 mm 2-contact Plug (P0090034) ..... 1
3.5 mm 3-contact Plug (P0091046) ..... 1
4-pin DIN Plug (P0091004) .....  .1
5-pin DIN Plug (P0091006) ..... 1
Operating Manual ..... 1
Warranty Card ..... 1

## Accessories \& Options

## Available Options

## TCXO-6 High-StabilityMaster Reference Oscillator

For special applications and environments where extra frequency stability is essential, such as for longterm HF packet monitoring under wide temperature variations, the TCXO- 6 provides $\pm 0.25$-ppm stability the master reference oscillator (after 1 min @ $25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ).

## MD-100A8X Desk-Top Microphone

Designed especially to match the electrical and cosmetic features of the MARK-V FT-1000MP, the MD100 ABx has a 600 Ohm impedance, and includes an up/down scanning ring and a large PTT switch with latch.

## SP-8 loudspeaker with Audio Filters \&

## LL-7 Рноле Ратсн Option

Selectable audio high- and low-pass filters together with a large loudspeaker complement the superb audio characteristics of the MARK-V FT-1000MP with your choice of 12 different audio filtering combinations. Two input terminals are provided for multiple transceivers, with a front panel switch to select between them. A (monaural) phone jack is provided on the front panel to take advantage of the audio filters with headphones.

With the optional LL-7 Phone Patch Unit installed in the SP-8, the MARK-V FT-1000MP can be patched to the public telephone network. The LL-7 includes a hybrid transformer circuit to assure proper impedance matches, and front panel gain controls and level meter to set proper audio levels on the telephone line.

## YH-77STA Lightwelght Stereo Headphones

Dual samarium-cobalt transducers with sensitivity of $103 \mathrm{~dB} / \mathrm{mW}( \pm 2 \mathrm{~dB}, @ 1 \mathrm{kHz}, 35 \mathrm{Ohms})$ provide the perfect match for the MARK-V FT-1000MP. During dual receive with the YH-77STA, one receiver can be monitored in each ear, allowing easy separation of the signals from the two receivers (or the audio can be mixed, if desired).

## DVS-2 Digital Voice Recorder

Serving as either a continuous receiver recorder for instant pushbutton playback, or microphone audio recorder for multiple on-air playback, the DVS-2 applies the advantages of random-access solid-state digital memory to serious communications. All data is stored electronically, with no moving parts except your finger and the pushbutton. More information is on page 81.

## FH-1 Remote Control Keypad

The FH-1 is a remote-control accessory designed to enhance the operating flexibility of your MARK-V FT-1000MP. The FH-1 permits several remote control features, which may be selected via Menu programming. More information is on page 76 .

## IF Crystal Filter Options

Five optional crystal filters may be installed in the Main Receiver of the MARK-V FT-1000MP, and one in the Sub Receiver.

## Optional Main Receiver Filters

8.2 MHz (2nd IF)

YF-114SN: $2.0-\mathrm{kHz}$ BW (for all modes except FM)
YF-114CN: $250-\mathrm{Hz}$ BW (for all except AM \& FM)
455 kHz (3rd IF)
YF-110SN: $2.0-\mathrm{kHz}$ BW (for all modes except FM) YF-115C Collins Mechanical Filter: $500-\mathrm{Hz}$ BW (for CW \& RTTY)
YF-110CN: 250-Hz BW (for CW only)

## Optional Sub Receiver Filter

455 kHz (2nd IF)
YF-115C: Collins Mechanical Filter $500-\mathrm{Hz}$ BW (for CW \& RTTY)

## Safety Precautions

Before initiating the installation of your MARK-V FT1000MP transceiver, please take the time to review the following safety guidelines.

## Power Connections

We strongly recommend that AC power for your MARK-V FT-1000MP be provided only from the supplied FP-29 AC Power Supply, so as to ensure that the voltage and current requirements of the MARK-V FT1000MP are fully met.

If you do need to provide DC power to your MARKV FT-1000MP, on an emergency basis, from a power source other than the FP-29, please be absolutely certain to observe proper connections in your wiring. Note that other manufacturers may use the same type of DC power connector as does Yaesu, but the wiring configuration of the other manufacturer's plug will almost certainly be different from that specified for your transceiver. The correct wiring diagram is shown below.

(as viewed from rear panel)

## Ground Connections

The MARK-V FT-1000MP HF transceiver, like any other HF communications apparatus, requires an effective ground system for maximum electrical safety and best communications effectiveness. A good ground system can contribute to station efficiency in a number of ways:
$\square$ It can minimize the possibility of electrical shock to the operator.
It can minimize RF currents flowing on the shield of the coaxial cable and the chassis of the transceiver; such currents may lead to radiation which can cause interference to home entertainment devices or laboratory test equipment.

- It can minimize the possibility of erratic transceiver/ accessory operation caused by RF feedback and/ or improper current flow through logic devices.
An effective earth ground system make take several forms; for a more complete discussion, see an appropriate RF engineering text. The information below is intended only as a guideline.

Typically, the ground connection consists of one or more copper-clad steel rods, driven into the ground. If multiple ground rods are used, they should be positioned in a " V " configuration, and bonded together at the apex of the " V " which is nearest the station location. Use a heavy, braided cable (such as the discarded shield from type RG-213 coaxial cable) and strong cable clamps to secure the braided cable(s) to the ground rods. Be sure to weatherproof the connections to ensure many years of reliable service. Use the same type of heavy, braided cable for the connections to the station ground bus (described below).

Inside the station, a common ground bus consisting of a copper pipe of at least 25 mm ( $1^{\prime \prime}$ ) diameter should be used. An alternative station ground bus may consist of a wide copper plate (single-sided circuit board material is ideal) secured to the bottom of the operating desk. Grounding connections from individual devices such as transceivers, power supplies, and data communications devices (TNCs, etc.) should be made directly to the ground bus using a heavy, braided cable.

Do not make ground connections from one electrical device to another, and thence to the ground bus. This so-called "Daisy-Chain" grounding technique may nullify any attempt at effective radio frequency grounding. See the drawing below for examples of proper grounding techniques.

Inspect the ground system - inside the station as well as outside - on a regular basis so as to ensure maximum performance and safety.

Besides following the above guidelines carefully, note that household or industrial gas lines must never be used in an attempt to establish an electrical ground. Cold water pipes may, in some instances, help in the grounding effort, but gas lines represent a significant explosion hazard, and must never be used.


Improper Ground Connection


## Electrical Shock Prevention

Be certain that all station wiring is properly insulated so as to prevent short-circuits which could damage this transceiver and/or accessories connected to it. Be sure to protect power cables from damage due to abrasion by ensuring that they cannot be walked upon nor crushed under rolling chairs, etc. Never route power cables near sharp metallic edges which might cut through protective insulation.

Never spill liquids into this transceiver, and do not drop sharp metallic objects into the transceiver enclosure. Electrical shock may result when you attempt to remove the object.

Unsupervised children should be kept away from any electrical apparatus such as the MARK-V FT1000MP transceiver and its accessories.

## Antenna Precautions

Always install antennas such that they can never come in contact with outdoor power lines in the event of a catastrophic antenna support or power line support structure failure. An adequate safety margin is usually provided by separating power lines from the antenna and its support structure [1.5 times the height of the support] plus [the length of any antenna or guy wires attached to the support] plus [the height of the power line support pole].

Ground the antenna support structure adequately, so as to dissipate energy absorbed during a lightning strike. Install appropriate lightning arrestors in the antenna lead-in and rotator cable (if used) according to the arrestor's instructions.

In the event of an approaching electrical storm, disconnect all antenna lead-in, rotator control, and power cables completely from the station, but only if the storm is not immediately in your area. Do not allow disconnected cables to touch the case of your MARKV FT-1000MP transceiver or accessories, as lightning can easily jump from the cable to the circuitry of your transceiver via the case, causing irreparable damage. If a lightning storm is in progress in your immediate area, do not attempt to disconnect the cables, as you could be killed instantly should lightning strike your antenna, tower, or a nearby power line.

If a vertical antenna is used, be certain that humans and/or pets or farm animals are kept away both from the radiating element (to prevent electrical shock and RF exposure danger) and the ground system (in the event of an electrical storm). The buried radials of a ground-mounted vertical antenna can carry lethal voltages outward from the center of the antenna in the event of a direct lightning strike.

## RF Field Exposure Advisory \& Electromagnetic Compatibility

This transceiver is capable of power output in excess of 50 Watts, so customers in the United States may be required to demonstrate compliance with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) regulations concerning maximum permissible exposure to radio frequency energy. Compliance is based on the actual power output used, feedline loss, antenna type and height, and other factors which can only be evaluated as a system. Information regarding these regulations may be available from your Dealer, your local radio club, from the FCC directly (press releases and other information can be found on the FCC's site on the World Wide Web at [http://www.fcc.gov](http://www.fcc.gov)), or from the American Radio Relay League, Inc. (225 Main St., Newington CT 06111 or [http://www.arrl.org](http://www.arrl.org)).

Remember to re-evaluate your station's compliance with these regulations during portable operations such as Field Day or special-event stations.

Regarding electromagnetic compatibility: if this transceiver is used with, or in the vicinity of, a computer or computer-driven accessories, you may need to experiment with grounding and/or Radio Frequency Interference (RFI) suppression devices (such as ferrite cores) to minimize interference to your communications caused by energy from the computer. Com-puter-generated RFI is usually a result of inadequate shielding of the computer's cabinet or I/O and peripheral connections. While computer equipment may "comply" with RF emission standards, this does not ensure that sensitive amateur radio receivers will not experience interference from the device!

Be certain to use only shielded cables for TNC-toTransceiver connections. You may need to install AC line filters on the power cord(s) of the suspected equipment, and decoupling ferrite toroidal chokes may be required on interconnecting patch/data cables. As a last resort, you can try installing additional shielding within the computer's case, using appropriate conductive mesh or conductive shielding tape. Especially check "RF holes" where plastic is used for cabinet front panels.

For further information, consult amateur radio reference guides and publications relating to RFI suppression techniques.

> Downloaded by RadioAmateur.EU

## Preliminary Inspection

Inspect the transceiver upon opening the packing carton. Check that all controls and switches work freely, and inspect the cabinet for any damage. Ensure the accessory fuses and plugs pictured on page 4 are included. If any damage is found, document it completely, and contact the shipping company (or dealer, if you purchased it over-the-counter) right away. Save the packing materials in case you need to return the set for service. If you have purchased optional internal accessories separately, install them as described on page 112.

## Power Connections

The MARK-V FT-1000MP is designed to be used in conjunction with the supplied FP-29 Dual-Voltage Power Supply. Connect the Power Cable from the FP29 to the DC IN Jack on the rear panel of the transceiver.

Note that other manufacturers may use the same type of DC power connections as does your MARK-V FT-1000MP transceiver, but the wiring configuration of the other manufacturer's plug almost certainly will be different from that specified for your transceiver. Serious damage can be caused if improper DC connections are made.

## Transceiver Location

To assure long life of the components, a primary consideration in setting up the MARK-V FT-1000MP is providing for adequate ventilation around the cabinet. The cooling system of the MARK-V FT-1000MP must be free to draw cool air in at the lower rear of the transceiver, and to expel warm air out of the upper rear panel. Do not place the transceiver on top of another heat-generating device such as a linear amplifier, and do not place equipment, books or papers on top of the transceiver. Also, provide a few centimeters of space on either side of the transceiver, if possible. Avoid heating vents and window locations that could expose the transceiver to excessive direct sunlight, especially in hot climates.

## Grounding

For protection from electrical shock, and to ensure proper performance, connect the GND terminal on the rear panel to a good earth ground, using a heavy braided cable of the shortest length possible. All other station equipment should be connected to the same grounding cable, as close together as practical. If you use a computer with or near the MARK-V FT-1000MP, you may need to experiment with ground wiring to suppress computer noise in the receiver, and ground loops during transmission.


## Changing the AC Input Voltage Selector Switch on the FP-29 (U.S.A. Users only)

ㅁ Before changing the Voltage Selector Switch, disconnect the FP-29's AC Power Cable from the AC line outlet, then wait 10 minutes to allow the power supply's electrolytic capacitors to discharge (electrical shock hazard!).
$\square$ Locate the Voltage Selector Switch on the bottom case of the FP-29; remove the protective clear cover and its nylon rivets from the case.

- Move the Voltage Selector Switch to the appropriate mains voltage for your country (either 230 V or 115 V ).
$\square$ Change the fuse in the fuse holder on the rear panel
of the FP-29, as indicated below. Do not use slowblow type fuses.

| AC Mains Voltage |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| $100 \sim 120 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |
| $200 \sim 240 \mathrm{~V}$ | 6 A |

Also, change the voltage marking on the label on the rear panel of the FP-29 to match the new voltage setting.
$\square$ Replace the protective clear cover and its nylon rivets. This completes the voltage change procedure.


Warning: Our Warranty does not cover damage caused by improper supply voltage nor use of an improper fuse.

## Antenna Considerations

The MARK-V FT-1000MP is designed for use with any antenna system providing a $50 \Omega$ resistive impedance at the desired operating frequency. While minor excursions from the $50 \Omega$ specification are of no consequence, the transceiver's Automatic Antenna Tuner may not be able to reduce the impedance mismatch to an acceptable value if the Standing Wave Ratio (SWR) present at the Antenna jack is greater than 3:1. Among the undesirable consequences that high SWR may produce are:
$\square$ The transceiver's power amplifier protection circuitry will reduce power if the Automatic Antenna Tuner is unsuccessful in reducing the SWR.
$\square$ Even if the Automatic Antenna Tuner successfully normalizes the impedance presented to the radio, feedline losses will escalate rapidly with increasing SWR at the higher operating frequencies, especially 28 MHz .
$\square$ Although high SWR itself does not cause feedline radiation, the sudden onset of high SWR may well indicate a mechanical failure in a matching device, leading to an electrical condition which may cause excessive feedline radiation, which can cause interference to nearby home-entertainment devices.
Every effort should, therefore, be made to ensure that the impedance of the antenna system utilized with the MARK-V FT-1000MP be as close as possible to the specified $50 \Omega$ value.

Any antenna to be used with the MARK-V FT1000MP must, ultimately, be fed with $50 \Omega$ coaxial cable. Therefore, when using a "balanced" antenna such as a dipole, remember that a balun or other matching/balancing device must be used so as to ensure proper antenna performance.

The same precautions apply to any additional (re-ceive-only) antennas connected to the RX ANT jack; if your receive-only antennas do not have an impedance near $50 \Omega$ at the operating frequency, you may need to install an external antenna tuner to obtain optimum performance.

Use high-quality $50 \Omega$ coaxial cable for the lead-in to your MARK-V FT-1000MP transceiver. All efforts at providing an efficient antenna system will be wasted if poor quality, lossy coaxial cable is used. Losses in coaxial lines increase as the frequency increases, so a coaxial line with only 0.5 dB of loss at 7 MHz may have 2 dB of loss at 28 MHz . For reference, the chart in the next column shows approximate loss figures for typi-cally-available coaxial cables frequently used in amateur radio installations.

Loss in dB per 30m (100 feet) for Selected $50 \Omega$ Coaxial Cables
(Assumes $50 \Omega$ Input/Output Terminations)

| Cable Type | Loss: <br> 2 MHz | Loss: <br> 15 MHz | Loss: <br> 28 MHz |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| RG-58A | 0.55 | 1.75 | 2.60 |
| RG-58 Foam | 0.54 | 1.50 | 2.00 |
| RG-8X | 0.39 | 1.07 | 1.85 |
| RG-8A, RG-213 | 0.27 | 0.85 | 1.25 |
| RG-8 Foam | 0.22 | 0.65 | 0.88 |
| Belden® $® 913$ | 0.18 | 0.50 | 0.69 |
| RG-17A | 0.88 | 0.30 | 0.46 |

Loss figures are approximate; consult cable manufacturers' catalogs for complete specifications.
Loss figures can increase significantly if high SWR is present on the transmission line.

## Adjusting the Front Feet

The two front feet of the MARK-V FT-1000MP can be set in either of two positions. By turning the knurled ring around a (retracted) foot clockwise, the middle of the foot will extend about one centimeter. Turn the ring as far as it will go (about $1 / 4$-turn) to lock the extended foot in place. To retract an extended foot, turn the knurled ring counterclockwise $1 / 4$-turn while pressing on the center of the foot.


## Memory Backup

The memory BACKUP switch on the rear panel is turned on at the factory, allowing VFO and memory data to be retained while power is off. Backup current is miniscule, so it is not necessary to turn the BACKUP switch off unless the transceiver is to be stored for an extended period.

After five or more years of operation the transceiver may fail to retain memories, at which time the lithium battery should be replaced. Contact your dealer for replacement of the battery; for instructions on how to do so yourself, see page 114.

## Linear Amplifier Interfacing

The MARK-V FT-1000MP can be used with the optional Yaesu FL-7000 or VL-1000 Linear Amplifier, providing automatic band switching via digital band data output from the BAND DATA jack on the rear panel of the transceiver. Most other amplifiers can be adapted to operate with the MARK-V FT-1000MP; however, the main points to be concerned with are the switching requirements of the amplifier, and if QSK (full break-in) operation is desired. The linear amplifier $T x / R x$ switching capability of the MARK-V FT-1000MP is described in the table below.

| Parameter | Operation |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | QSK <br> Relay Disabled | Non-QSK <br> Relay Enabled |
| DC Switching <br> Voltage | $<40 \mathrm{VDC}$ | $<60 \mathrm{VDC}$ |
| DC Swiching <br> Current | $<150 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $<200 \mathrm{~mA}$ |
| AC Switching <br> Voltage | - | $<100 \mathrm{VAC}$ |
| AC Swiching <br> Current | - | $<500 \mathrm{~mA}$ |

## Operation with QSK Amplifiers

Connect the RF output from the transceiver ANT jack ( $\mathbf{A}$ or $\mathbf{B}$ ) to the RF input jack of the linear. Connect the ALC output from the linear to the EXT ALC jack on the rear of the transceiver (see the "About ALC" discussion below). After making the RF and Tx/Rx switching connections described below, you may need to adjust the ALC output level of the linear so that it is not overdriven by the MARK-V FT-1000MP. Your linear's manual should describe how to do this.

If using a VL-1000, connect the BAND DATA Cable (supplied with the VL-1000) from the transceiver BAND DATA jack to the amplifier BAND-DATA 1 jack; this will provide automatic band selection for the linear, as well as QSK Tx/Rx switching control. You may also connect a user-constructed control cable (refer to VL-1000 manual for details) from the transceiver REMOTE jack to the amplifier BAND-DATA 2 jack to provide automatic amplifier tune-up for the linear using the MARKV FT-1000MP. Press the VL-1000's front panel ATT switch to activate the 3 dB input RF power attenuator, to pad the 200 Watt (maximum) input power from the MARK-V FT-1000MP.


## Linear Amplifier Interfacing


#### Abstract

If using an FL-7000, connect optional cable E-767 (P/N D4000019) from the transceiver BAND DATA jack to the amplifier ACC-2 jack. This provides automatic band selection for the linear, as well as QSK Tx/Rx switching control. Turn on the FL-7000 rear panel ATT switch to activate the 3 dB input RF power attenuator, to pad the 200 Watt input power from the MARK-V FT1000MP.


If using another manufacturer's QSK linear, and if its switching circuitry consumes less than 150 mA of DC voltage below 40 V , you can connect the Tx/Rx switching line for the linear to pin 2 ("TX GND") of the BAND DATA jack (use pin 3 for ground), and the linear's exciter-enable output to pin 8 ("TX INHIBIT") of the BAND DATA jack. This line must be switched to ground to enable transmission once the linear is ready for excitation from the MARK-V FT-1000MP. If your QSK linear sinks more than 100 mA or uses more than 15 V for T/R relay switching, you will have to provide a suitable external interface transistor, controlled by pin 2. Be certain to make provision for suitable reduction of the drive power from the MARK-V FT-1000MP, so as not to damage your amplifier.

## Operation with non-QSK Amplifiers (FL-2100 SERIES OR оTHERS)

The TX GND jack on the transceiver rear panel is connected to an internal relay, for non-QSK T/R switching of linear amplifiers that use AC switching voltage, or DC voltage greater than +15 V , negative DC voltage of any kind (such as the Heath ${ }^{\circledR}$ SB-220/SB-221 models), or if they are required to sink more than 100 mA for T/R switching. A schematic diagram of the relay circuit is provided below. If not using your linear amplifier in a full break-in environment, the use of this relay for amplifier switching is highly recommended.

This relay comes disabled (rear-panel LIN set to "OFF") to avoid the clicking sound when the transceiver is used alone or with a QSK linear. To enable the relay for non-QSK linears that exceed the above T/R switching requirements, you will need to move the LIN switch, located in the hole near the center of the rear panel, to its right position (see the drawing). Use a thin, insulated, sharp object to move the switch. Then connect the center contact of the TX GND jack to the positive relay-control line to your linear, and the outer contact to the "common" line or the linear's chassis ground. Refer to the diagram at the next page; in this example, a older non-QSK amplifier (FL-2100B) is shown.

With the relay now enabled, the MARK-V FT1000MP can support non-QSK linear T/R switching voltages up to 100 VAC @ 500 mA , or DC voltage up to 60 V @ 200 mA , or closed-circuit current up to 1 A with DC voltage up to 30 V .


## Linear Amplifier Interfacing

## Caution - Please Read!!

The MARK-V FT-1000MP is designed for use with the FL-7000/VL-1000 when QSK operation with a linear amplifier is desired. If you are using a different amplifier, do not attempt QSK operation with the linear if its switching circuitry requires that the MARK-V FT-1000MP's relay be enabled. Using pins 2 and 8 of the BAND DATA jack for other amplifiers will not work unless the control line signals are carefully matched, and damage may result otherwise.

During linear operation, be sure to account for the MARK-V FT-1000MP's maximum power capability of 200 Watts, and take care not to over-drive your linear amplifier.
Your transceiver's warranty does not cover damage resulting from improper connections to this jack, so if you are not sure of the linear amplifier's break-in capabilities or switching requirements, the safest approach is to enable the relay, use the TX GND jack (after setting the LIN switch to the "ON" position) and resort to non-QSK operation. This will help prevent possible damage to the amplifier or transceiver.


## Accessory Installation

## Transverter Operation

The MARK-V FT-1000MP can be used with the optional Yaesu FTV-1000 50 MHz Transcverter, providing excellent receiver performance and up to 200 Watts of power output.

A FTV-1000 setup is shown below. Refer to the detail regarding the interconnection and operation to the FTV1000 Operating Manual.


## Accessory Installation

## Digital Modem (TNC, WeatherFax, etc.) Interfacing

The MARK-V FT-1000MP offers special features for digital modes, such as a built-in digitally-synthesized AFSK generator for RTTY and AMTOR terminal units, IF bandwidth optimization and automatic display offsets, and an 18 -ms transmit-to-receive turn-around time.

Low-level Main Receiver audio output is provided from the rear-panel RTTY and PKT jacks, and is unaffected by front panel volume control settings. If you prefer to use Sub Receiver audio for TNC input, switch S3001 (located on the AF UNIT circuit board, inside the transceiver, between the DVS-2 and PKT connectors) can be moved from the MAIN to the SUB position.

Audio level is 100 mV from both jacks. The RTTY level is fixed; however, PKT audio level can be adjusted by potentiometer VR3010. In many cases, it is easier to perform level adjustments at the TNC.


## Digital Modes with a TNC or Computer Sound Card (PSK-31)

The explosion of new digital modes of amateur communication means that you will want to make connections to your TNC and/or computer as "standardized" as possible. Generally, this will mean that you will want to connect your transceiver in an "AFSK" environment. On the MARK-V FT-1000MP, the PACKET jack is the "AFSK" connection port, while the RTTY jack is an "FSK" connection port. In the AFSK mode, the TNC or computer generates the data signal as a set of audio tones, while the FSK mode uses a closure to ground (in the TNC or terminal unit) to cause the transceiver to generate the "mark" and "space" tones.

| Packet Tone Information |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| TNC Tone Pair | Tone Center Frequency |
| $1070 / 1270 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 1170 Hz |
| $1600 / 1800 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 1700 Hz |
| $2025 / 2225 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 2125 Hz |
| $2110 / 2310 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 2210 Hz |
| ※ indicates default setting (used by normal convention) |  |

## Accessory Installation

## Digital Modem (TNC, WeatherFax, etc.) Interfacing

Construct a patch cable or cables to make the necessary connections between your TNC and the appropriate rear panel jack(s) (RTTY for FSK, PACKET for AFSK). Refer to the pin-out diagram below, and the wiring instructions included with your TNC. A description of the PACKET jack's individual pins follows:

Pin 1 (DATA IN) - Connect this pin to your TNC's "AFSK Out" or "Mic Audio" output line. The optimum input level is 30 mV rms, and the input impedance is 3 $k \Omega$. Your TNC's audio output level potentiometer will allow you to set the level to the optimum value. This pin may be used either for 300 baud SSB-mode digital operation or for 1200-baud FM packet. The bandwidth and frequency response are not, however, suitable for 9600 baud operation.

Pin 2 (Ground) - Connect this to the shield(s) of the cable(s) used for connections between the TNC and the MARK-V FT-1000MP.

Pin 3 (PTT) - Connect this pin to the PTT line from the TNC. This pin, when grounded by the TNC, places the MARK-V FT-1000MP into the Transmit condition.

Pin 4 (DATA Out)- Connect this pin to your TNC's "RX Audio" input line. This is a constant-level ( 100 mV rms @ $600 \Omega$ ) audio output line which is not affected by the position of the front-panel AF GAIN control.

Pin 5 (BUSY) - This is a "Squelch Status" pin not generally required for digital mode operation. This pin is held at +5 V when the squelch is open, and is grounded when the receiver is muted by the squelch ("no-signal" condition).

For FSK operation using the RTTY jack, the following are the pin connections required:

Pin 1 (SHIFT) - Connect this pin to your TNC or terminal unit's "FSK Key" port. Closing and opening of this line to ground causes mark/space keying.

Pin 2 (RX AF OUT) - Same as "DATA OUT" on PACKET jack.

Pin 3 (PTT) - Same as "PTT" on PACKET jack.
Pin 4 (GND) - Same as "GND" on PACKET jack.
For operation on PSK31, connect your computer's sound card to the PACKET jack (for "PKT" mode operation) or the MIC and EXT SP jacks (for "SSB" mode qperation).Also, usemenu selection 8-6 to configure the "User" mode (see page 110) for PSK31 operation.

For most operation, you will want to use the PS31U (for PKT mode) or PS31-SU (for USB mode) options under "East Set;" while BPSK operation is not sideband-sensitive, QPSK operation, by convention, utilizes USB-side injection.

The "User" mode is accessed, during operation, by pressing and holding in for $1 / 2$ second the [PKT] mode switch.

MARK-V FT-1000MP


## Digital Modem (TNC, WeatherFax, etc.) Interfacing

## CAUTION!!

The MARK-V FT-1000MP cooling system is designed to handle continuous duty transmission at 200 watts output. However, for continuous-duty digital modes like RTTY, we recommend limiting your transmissions to 3 minutes or less, with at least 3 minutes receive in between transmissions. Place your hand on the transceiver occasionally to ensure that it's not getting too hot, and try to keep power output at 100 watts or less.
You can limit the maximum RF power output to 75 watts via programming, by recalling menu selection 4-0 and choosing reduced power output.

MARK-V FT-1000MP


## Accessory Installation

## Digital Modem (TNC, WeatherFax, etc.) Interfacing

## Note: Computer-Generated RFI

When using a TNC connected to your transceiver, or even having a PC located in the shack, the possibility exists that you may experience computer-generated RFI (Radio Frequency Interference).

The CPU in a personal computer operates with a crystal-controlled oscillator (clock) and timing circuits. Common clock frequencies include 8, 12, 16, 20 and 25 MHz . In addition, high-speed digital data switching uses square waves, which produce odd-order harmonic frequencies.

Computer-generated RFI may appear at seemingly random frequencies (usually right where a rare DX station is calling CQ!) throughout the range of your transceiver, and may sound like constant ticking or buzzing that may change as you type or work within a program. Severe RFI may have S-meter indications as much greater than S-9, making copy of voice signals difficult and data signals virtually impossible.

Computer-generated RFI is usually a result of inadequate shielding of the PC's cabinet or I/O and peripheral connections. While computer equipment may
comply with RF emission approval standards, this does not ensure that sensitive amateur radio receivers will not experience RFI from the device.

There are a few steps you can take to reduce or eliminate computer-generated RFI. The first step is to ensure that only shielded cables are used for TNC-totransceiver connections, carefully check RF ground connections and re-orient your station equipment in relation to the computer. Try moving your PC and peripherals slightly and see if it has any affect on the RFI, in some cases, this alone may be enough to correct the problem.

If not, several additional steps to try include installing AC line filters on the power cord(s) of the suspected equipment and inserting decoupling ferrite toroidal chokes on interconnecting patch/data cables and smaller ferrite beads on single wires.

As a last resort, you can try installing additional shielding within the PC case, using appropriate conductive mesh/screening or conductive tape. Especially check RF "holes" where plastic is used for cabinet front panels. For further information, consult amateur radio reference guides and publications relating to RFI suppression techniques.

## Downloaded by RadioAmateur.EU

## Other Digital/Recording Device Interfacing

## AF OUT Jack

This is a 3.5 mm miniature stereo phone jack which provides constant-level ( $100 \mathrm{mV} @ 600 \Omega$ ) for connection to a WeatherFax decoder, tape recorder, or other accessory. The audio output level is not affected by the setting of the front panel AF GAIN \& SUB AF controls, so you can turn the volume down, if you like, without affecting the audio level being presented to your decoding device. The tip connection of this jack is Main receiver audio, while the ring connection is Sub receiver audio.

The connections to the AF OUT jack are at the same level as the connection to Pin 4 of the PACKET jack. However, the two output ports use independent output buffer amplifiers, so you can freely connect and disconnect devices to/from these ports without concern over the impedances and levels.

## PTT (Push To Talk) Jack

This RCA jack is wired in parallel with the front panel's MIC jack, providing a handy connection point for a footswitch for voice operation, allowing handsfree PTT operation.

## PATCH JACK

For transmit audio input for SSTV (Slow-Scan Television) operation, you may connect the SSTV terminal's Tx Audo line to the PATCH jack. You will need to disconnect the microphone, however, during transmission, as the PATCH jack is connected in a " $Y$ " configuration along with the microphone input (from pin 8 of the MIC jack).

## CW Key/Paddle and Computer Keying Interface Suggestions

## Features

The MARK-V FT-1000MP includes a host of features for the CW operator, the functions of which will be detailed in the "Operation" section later. Besides the built-in Electronic Keyer, two key jacks are provided, one each on the front and rear panels, for convenient connection to keying devices.

Both KEY jacks on the MARK-V FT-1000MP utilize "positive" keying voltage. Key-up voltage is approximately +5 V DC, and key-down current is approximately 0.5 mA . When connecting a key or other device to the KEY jacks, use only a 3 -pin ("stereo") $1 / 4$ " phone plug; a 2 -pin plug will place a short between the ring and (grounded) shaft of the plug, resulting in a constant "key-down" condition in some circumstances.

## Configuration Suggestions

1. For everyday operation using the internal electronic memory keyer, connect your paddle to the front pane/ KEY jack, and activate the front panel [KEY] switch. If you wish to keep the keyer paddle's cable out of the way, connect the plug, instead, to the rear panel KEY jack.
2. If two operators are using the MARK-V FT-1000MP simultaneously (for a contest, Field Day, etc.), a second keyer paddle may be connected to the rear pane/ KEY jack. With the front panel [KEYER] switch pressed in, both operators' paddles will have access to the internal keyer.
3. If two operators are using the MARK-V FT-1000MP simultaneously, but both wish to use a straight key, outboard electronic keyer, or computer-driven keying cables, the key plugs may be inserted into the front and rear panel KEY jacks; now turn the front panel's [KEYER] switch off.


## Accessory Installation

## Antenna Connections

The MARK-V FT-1000MP's three antenna connectors, plus innovative microprocessor-based memory and switching circuits, provide excellent flexibility in setting up your antenna connections.

Typical antenna configurations are shown below. Remember that Antenna $\mathbf{A}$ and Antenna $\mathbf{B}$ (which are "SO-239" or "M" connectors) may be used for transmission and reception, while the RX Antenna port (which is an "RCA" type connector) may only be used for reception.

## NOTE REGARDING LARGE RECEIVE ANTENNAS

Although surge suppression is provided on all antenna ports, you may wish to consider building a simple external circuit which will disconnect, on TX, any antenna connected to the RX ANT IN jack, particularly if you are using a very long wire antenna such as a Beverage. Very long antennas can build up very high RF and static voltages on them, and the circuit below may provide better protection for your receiver's input circuitry.


28 MHz 5el Yagi


MARK-V FT-1000MP
FP-29


## Personal Computer Interfacing for Contest Software, etc.

The MARK-V FT-1000MP features a built-in level converter, allowing direct connection from the rearpanel CAT jack to the serial port of your computer, without the need for any external converter box.

When your software requests serial port configuration information, set it for " $4800, \mathrm{~N}, 8,2$ " ( 4800 baud, No Parity, 8 Data Bits, and 2 Stop Bits). Be certain to configure and activate any required "TSR" (Terminate-and-Stay-Resident) utilities before beginning computer-controlled transceiver operation (your software's instruction manual will describe any such requirement).

Details regarding the programming protocols for the CNT system may be found beginning on page 86.

This chapter describes each control and connector on the MARK-V FT-1000MP. You can just glance through it quickly now, but some of the descriptions will be more meaningful if you take the time to read them in detail now. If questions arise later while proceeding through the operation chapter, you can return to this chapter with the set powered up for control knob clarification. Some controls and switches are disabled under certain conditions.


## Front Panel Controls



## 1. POWER Button

This button turns the transceiver on and off.

## 2. MOX \& VOX Buttons

[MOX] may be used in place of a microphone PTT switch or CW key to activate the transmitter, when depressed. It must be in the undepressed position for reception.
[VOX] enables automatic voice-actuated transmitter switching in the SSB, AM and FM modes, and "semi-break-in" keying in CW mode. The controls affecting VOX operation are located in the top access panel. Menu Selection $7-5$ sets the receiver recovery time during semi-break-in CW operation.

## 3. AGC Selector Knob

Selects main receiver Automatic Gain Control decay time for most comfortable reception, or disables receiver AGC (off). Normally this switch is set to the "AUTO" position. Strong signals will cause distortion if this selector is set to "OFF."

## 4. PHONES Jack

A $1 / 4$-inch and $3.5 \mathrm{~mm}, 3$-contact jack accept either monaural or stereo headphones with 2 - or 3 -contact plugs. When a plug is inserted, the loudspeaker is disabled. With stereo headphones such as the optional YH-77STA, you can monitor both receiver channels at the same time during dual reception. In this case, the headphone HP controls (page 32) beneath the top access panel adjust the levels for mixed, separate, or monaural headphone operation.

## 5. KEY Jack

This $1 / 4$-inch, 3 -contact jack accepts a CW key or keyer paddles (for the built-in electronic keyer), or output from an external electronic keyer. You cannot use a 2-contact plug in this jack (to do so produces a constant "key down" condition). Pinout is shown on page 4. Key up voltage is 5 V , and key down current is 0.5 mA . There is another jack with the same name, connected in parallel with this jack, on the rear panel.

## 6. MIC $-5-$ PROC Knob

The inner MIC control adjusts the microphone input level for (non-processed) SSB and AM transmission.

The outer PROC control sets the compression (input) level of the transmitter RF speech processor in the SSB modes, when activated by the button with the same name.

## 7. MIC Jack

This 8-pin jack accepts input from the MH-31B8D Microphone. MIC connector pinout is shown on page 4. Proper microphone input impedance is $500 \sim 600$ Ohms.

## 8. AF GAIN -S- RF GAIN Knob

The inner AF GAIN control adjusts the audio volume of the main receiver VFO in the speaker or headphones.

The outer RF GAIN control adjusts the receiver signal level in front of the main receiver 1st mixer (via PIN diodes), and also the gain of the main receiver IF amplifiers.

It is normally set fully clockwise for maximum sensitivity. When rotated counter-clockwise, the S-meter minimum deflection point will move up the scale. The peak deflection for a particular signal will remain the same if it is greater than the level set by this control, but the main receiver will be less sensitive to weaker signals.

This control also affects the SQL setting for main VFO-A, and should be preset fully clockwise when setting the squelch threshold for the VFO or on a recalled memory.

## 9. RF PWR Knob

This control adjusts the transmitter's output power in all modes. The adjustment range is from approximately 5 to 200 watts, except in the AM mode, where the permitted carrier level is about 5 to 50 watts. This knob also controls the carrier level for CW transmission. In setting the output power, the ALC function of the meter should always be monitored, to avoid overdriving the transmitter final amplifier.

In the "Class A" SSB operating mode, the adjustment range for power output will be between approximately 5 and 75 watts.

## 10. PROC Button

This button enables the RF speech processor for SSB transmission. Processing level is set by the outer control with the same name. While activated, the LED in this button glows red.

## 11. MONI Button

This orange button enables the transmit (RF) monitor in all modes (except CW, in which the monitor function is always on, to produce the sidetone). While activated, the LED in this button glows red.

## 12. SUB AF Knob

The SUB AF control adjusts the audio volume of the sub receiver VFO in the speaker or headphones.

The AF GAIN control, located above, and this SUB AF control can be rotated to adjust the relative balance of receiver audio between the two receiver channels during dual reception.

## 13. MONI Knob

When activated by the [MONI] button (above), the audio level of the transmit RF monitor during transmission (relative to the AF GAIN control) is adjusted by this control.

## 14. SQL Knob

This control sets the signal level threshold at which main VFO-A receiver audio is muted (and the green "MAIN BUSY" display indicator turns off), in all modes. This control is normally kept fully counter-clockwise, except when scanning and during FM operation.

## 15. METER Selector Switches

These switches determine the function of the multifunction meter during transmission. The meanings of the abbreviations are as follows:

IC/SWR - Final amplifier collector current (Amps) and Standing Wave Ratio (forward: reflected).
ALC/COMP - Relative Automatic Level Control voltage and RF speech compressor level (in dB , for SSB modes only).
VCC/MIC - Final amplifier collector voltage and microphone gain input level.

The meter indicates power output and the selected parameter during transmission, and signal strength in S-units during reception (on the main receiver). Each S-unit is approximately 6 dB .

## 16. ATT Selector Knob

This knob inserts 6, 12, or 18 dB (1, 2, or 3 S-units) of attenuation before the mixer to suppress band noise and reduce the possibility of overload from very strong signals.

## 17. IPO Button

The Intercept Point Optimization button may be used to set optimum receiver front end characteristics for a strong environment. Selecting IPO bypasses the front end RF amplifier and feeds the received signals directly to the first mixer.

## 18. ANT [A/B RX] Buttons

[A/B] - Pressing this selects either the ANT A or B jack on the rear panel, and allows convenient antenna switching at the press of a button. The selected antenna jack is also indicated at the top of the display (above the channel group number).
[RX] - Normally, the antenna connected to the ANT $\mathbf{A}$ or $\mathbf{B}$ jack is used for receive (and always used for transmitting). When this switch is pressed (display indicator on), an antenna connected to the RX ANT IN jack is used during receive.

## Front Panel Controls



## 19. EDSP Filters

## (A) APF

Selects and indicates the bandwidth for the EDSP CW audio peaking filter. Pressing the [APF] switch selects the bandwidth to be used for the EDSP CW audio peaking filter, with available selections of $\mathbf{2 4 0 ( H z ) /}$ $\mathbf{1 2 0 ( H z )} / \mathbf{6 0}(\mathrm{Hz})$ /DATA (DATA is an optimized bandwidth for FAX, PACKET or SSTV operation, user-optimized via the Menu), or "OFF," and the indicator changes according to the bandwidth selected. The most narrow setting is highly useful for very-weak-signal CW work.
(B) NR

Selects and indicates the setting of the EDSP Noise Reduction feature. Pressing the [NR] switch selects one of four EDSP noise reduction settings, and the indicator changes according to the selection chosen (choose the selection providing the most effective reduction of noise under current operating conditions).
(C) CONTOUR

Press one of these four switches to select the desired EDSP (Contour) filter.
(T. Low Cut Filter (High-frequency emphasis)

Pressing this button activates the EDSP Low Cut Filter; the CONTOUR LED will glow green.

【I:Mid Cut Filter (High- \& Low-frequency emphasis) Pressing this button activates the EDSP Medium Cut Filter; the CONTOUR LED will glow orange.

## D: High Cut Filter (Low-frequencies emphasis) Pressing this button activates the EDSP High Cut Filter; the CONTOUR LED will glow red. <br> OFF: <br> EDSP filter is off; the CONTOUR LED will go out.

## 20. MODE Selection Buttons

These momentary buttons select the operating mode, indicated by the LED in each button. Pressing AM, CW, RTTY, or PKT multiple times will switch between the alternate operating features that can be used by these modes (covered later). Also, when you press and hold in the [PKT] key for one second, the userprogrammed custom function setting mode will be activated.

## 21. CLASS-A Button

This button changes the final amplifier operating mode to Class-A. When operating the final amplifier in the Class-A mode, the maximum output power will be reduced to approximately 75 watts, and the LED inside this button will glow red. Operating SSB in Class$\boldsymbol{A}$ yields an ultra-clean signal waveform.

## 22. FAST Button

For fast tuning, press this button (the "FAST" icon will appear), then rotate the main or sub tuning knobs (or press the $\mathbf{U P}(\mathbf{\Lambda})$ or $\operatorname{DOWN}(\mathbf{\nabla})$ button). The tuning rate will increase ten times.

## 23. MAIN VFO-A Tuning Knob

This large knob adjusts the operating frequency of Main VFO-A (or a recalled memory). Default tuning increments are 10 Hz ( 100 Hz in AM and FM modes). When the [FAST] button has been pressed, the increments are 10 x these sizes. See the table on page 38 for a listing of all available steps.

## 24. Shuttle Jog and VRF \& IDBT Buttons

The Shuttle Jog ring allows fine or rapid frequency excursions with just a slight turn of your hand. Rotating the ring slightly either to the left or the right tunes downward or upward a few steps. The tuning rate increases the farther the ring is rotated.

Pressing the [VRF] button on the left side of the Shuttle Jog activates the VRF (Variable RF Front-end Filter), which adds a narrow input preselector filter into the RF receiver circuit on the 160-20 meter Amateur bands. Its passband can be tuned by rotating the VRF/ MEM CH knob, located on the upper right corner of the front panel, for maximum sensitivity and out-of-band interference rejection.

Pressing the [IDBT] button on the right side of the Shuttle Jog activates the IDBT (Interlocked Digital Bandwidth Tracking) System, which matches the EDSP (Bandwidth) filter characteristics to the settings of the SHIFT and WIDTH knobs. Thus, it is not necessary to re-adjust the EDSP settings if you change the (IF) WIDTH and/or SHIFT settings; the EDSP settings will automatically follow those of the higher-frequency IF passband.

## 25. LOCK Button

This button toggles locking of the main tuning knob to prevent accidental frequency changes. "LOCK" is displayed in a red box below and to the left of the main frequency display field when this command is active (the tuning knob can still be turned, but it does nothing). Press [LOCK] again to enable the tuning knob.

## 26. AF REV Button

Pressing this reverses the main/sub receiver audio adjusted using the AF GAIN knob and SUB AF knob. When activated, the LED inside this button glows red.

## 27. DOWN ( $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ ) \& UP( $\mathbf{A}$ ) Buttons

Pressing either of these buttons momentarily steps the operating frequency down or up 100 kHz , respectively. Pressing and holding the [FAST] button while pressing one of these buttons steps the frequency down or up 1 MHz . Continue holding either button for repeated stepping.

## 28. MAIN VFO-A [RX \& TX Switch-LED]

These combination lamp-switches select and indicate the transmit/receive status of the main tuning knob and display. When the green "RX" lamp is lit, the receiving frequency is under control of the main knob and display (either VFO-A or a recalled memory channel). When the red "TX" lamp is lit, the transmitting frequency is under control of the main knob and display. Thus, for "normal" (non-split) operation, both the red and green lamps associated with the main tuning knob will be illuminated.

## 29. VFO/MEM Button

This button toggles main receiver operation between the memory channel and the main VFO-A. Either "VFO," "MEM," or "M TUNE" will be displayed to the left of the main frequency display field to indicate the current selection. If a displayed memory has been retuned, pressing this button returns the display to the original memory contents, and pressing it again returns operation to the Main VFO.

## 30. $[\mathbf{M} \perp A]$ Button

Pressing this button momentarily displays the contents of the currently-selected memory channel for three seconds. Holding this button for $1 / 2$ second copies the data from the currently selected memory to the Main VFO-A, as two beeps sound. Previous data in the Main VFO will be overwritten.

## 31. QMB Buttons

[RCL] (Recall) - Recalls one of up to five Quick Memory Bank memories for operation.
[STO] (Store) - Pressing this copies operating parameters into consecutive QMB Memories.

## 32. [DUAL] Button

This button activates dual-channel reception with the main and sub receivers. When this function is active, "DUAL" will be displayed in a box at the left edge of the display.


## 33. VFO \& Memory Control

$[A-B]$ Button:
Pressing this button for $1 / 2$ second (until the double beep) transfers data from the main display (either Main VFO-A or a recalled memory channel) to Sub VFO-B, overwriting any previous contents in the Sub VFO. Use this key to set both Main and Sub Receivers to the same frequency and mode.
[ $A \geqslant B$ Button:
Pressing this button momentarily exchanges the contents of Main VFO-A (or a recalled memory channel), and Sub VFO-B. No data is lost.
[M GRP] Button:
When more than one memory group has been enabled, pressing this button limits selection and scanning to those memories within the selected group.
[M CK] (Memory Check) Button:
This key displays the contents of memory channels without disturbing operation. When pressed, "M CK" is displayed above the channel number, and each memory channel can then be checked on the Sub Receiver display by rotating the VRF/MEM CH selector. Empty memory channels display as two decimals, with no frequency digits. Press this button again to cancel memory checking.

## [A M M Button:

Pressing and holding in this key for $1 / 2$ second (until the double beep) copies the current operating data from Main VFO-A, or a recalled memory, to the currently selected memory channel, overwriting any previous data stored there. Also, pressing and holding this button after recalling a memory, without first retuning, causes the memory channel to be "masked," and repeating the process restores the masked memory.
[RPT] Button:
For 29 MHz FM operation, this button activates the standard HF FM repeater offset. Pressing [RPT] once or twice while receiving causes the transmit frequency to be shifted 100 kHz below or above the receiving frequency, respectively. A selectable CTCSS subaudible tone is also transmitted automatically when using this feature, to allow access to repeaters that require it. Pressing [RPT] a third time cancels repeater shift operation.

## 34. BAND (Keypad)

The keypad provides one-touch band selection, or digital frequency entry. Normally, pressing one of the ten white numbered keys selects the corresponding $(\mathrm{MHz})$ amateur band for operation (pressing the SUB button first, followed by a [BAND] key, selects that band for the Sub VFO). If you press the white numbered key for the band you are already on, you will select the alternate subband VFO on that band. See the "Operation" chapter for details.

If the [ENT] key is pressed first, the yellow labels on the keys become effective, for manually entering any frequency one digit at a time; press [SUB(CE)] then [ENT] to enter Sub-VFO frequencies directly.

## 35. SUB VFO-B [RX \& TX Switch-LED]

These lamps select and indicate the current status of Sub VFO-B. When the green "RX" lamp is lit, the receiving frequency is under control of SUB VFO-B. When the red "TX" lamp is lit, the transmitting frequency is under control of SUB VFO-B. During dual receive operation, the green " $\mathbf{R X}$ " lamps above both tuning knobs Main and Sub) will be illuminated.

## 36. SUB VFO-B Tuning Knob

This knob adjusts the Sub VFO-B operating frequency. The available tuning increments are the same as described for the main tuning knob, although each tuning knob's increments may be set independently (see page 38).

## 37. [LOCK] Button

This button toggles locking of SUB VFO-B tuning to prevent accidental frequency changes. The red indicator in the display glows when this command is active (the tuning knob can still be turned, but it does nothing). Press the [LOCK] button again to re-enable the tuning knob.

## 38. SUB SQL Knob

This separate control sets the signal level threshold at which SUB VFO-B receiver audio is muted (and the green "SUB BUSY" display indicator turns off), in all modes. This control is normally kept fully CCW, except when scanning and during FM operation.

## 39. CW and Electronic Keyer Controls

[SPOT] button turns the CW receiver spotting heterodyne oscillator on and off.
[BK-IN] button turns full break-in (QSK) CW operation on and off.
[KEYER] button toggles the internal CW keyer on/ off, as indicated by the LED above this button.
[SPEED] knob adjusts the keying speed of the keyer.

## 40. PITCH Knob

Rotate this control to select your desired CW tone pitch (from $300 \sim 1050 \mathrm{~Hz}$, in 50 Hz increments), as shown in the display. The Tx sidetone, receiver IF passband, and display offset from the BFO (carrier) frequency are all affected simultaneously.

## 41. [CLAR] Buttons

Pressing the $[\mathbf{R X}]$ button activates the CLAR knob, to allow offsetting the receiving frequency temporarily (see item 42 below). The [TX] button provides the same function for the transmit frequency. If both buttons are pressed, the receiver and transmitter are both offset from the original frequency. Pressing the [CLEAR] button zeroes any offset tuned by the CLAR knob. Each memory and VFO retains all Clarifier settings independently.

## 42. CLAR Knob

This knob tunes the Clarifier offset frequency up to 9.99 kHz when activated by the CLAR [RX] [TX] buttons just below it (a 3 -digit display appears in the center of the display (if enabled) when the Clarifier is active).

## 43. NOTCH Knob

This knob adjusts the IF notch frequency when this feature is activated by the [NOTCH] button located above this knob. When activated, the LED inside the [NOTCH] button glows red.

## 44. IDBT Indicator

This red indicator lights up when the IDBT System is activated by pressing the [IDBT] button on the Shuttle Jog. When this indicator is illuminated, the EDSP (Contour) filter's bandwidth and center frequency changes according to the SHIFT and WIDTH knob settings.

## 45. SHIFT Knob

This knob offsets the center frequency of the IF passband when rotated from its "normal" (center) position. This control functions in all modes except FM.

When the IDBT System is activated by pressing the [IDBT] button on the Shuttle Jog, the EDSP (Contour) filter's passband offset changes according to this knob's setting.

## 46. WIDTH Knob

This knob, when turned from center, reduces the overall IF bandwidth from either the lower or upper side, from the maximum selected by the [BANDWIDTH] buttons.

When the IDBT feature is activated by pressing the [IDBT] button on the Shuttle Jog, the EDSP (Contour) filter's passband width is reduced according to this knob's setting.


## 48. BANDWIDTH Buttons (NOR/NAR1/NAR2) Buttons

These three buttons select the 2nd and 3rd IF filters for the receiver (except in the FM mode). The LED inside each button glows red when the corresponding bandwidth is selected.

The available 2nd and 3rd IF filters are as follows:

## 49. NB Button

Pressing this button activates the IF Noise Blanker, which may help reduce many different types of manmade impulse noise (but not atmospherics). When the Noise Blanker is activated, the LED inside button will glow red.

You can select the Noise Blanker Type (for shortduration pulses or for long-duration pulses) and its blanking level via menu selection 2-8.

## 2nd and 3rd IF Filter Bandwidth

| MODE | NOR |  | NAR 1 |  | NAR 2 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\begin{gathered} \text { 2nd IF } \\ (8.2 \mathrm{MHz}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3rd IF } \\ (455 \mathrm{kHz}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 2nd IF } \\ (8.2 \mathrm{MHz}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3rd IF } \\ (455 \mathrm{kHz}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 2nd IF } \\ (8.2 \mathrm{MHz}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3rd IF } \\ (455 \mathrm{kHz}) \end{gathered}$ |
| SSB | $2.4 \mathrm{kHz} / \mathrm{ATT}{ }^{* 1}$ | $2.4 / 6.0 \mathrm{kHz}^{* 1}$ | 2.0 (2.4) kHz | 2.0 (2.4) kHz | N/A (2.0 kHz) | $\mathrm{N} / \mathrm{A}(2.0 \mathrm{kHz})$ |
| CW | 2.0/2.4 kHz*2 | 2.0/2.4 kHz*2 | 500 Hz | 500 Hz | 250 Hz | 250 Hz |
| AM | ATT | 6.0 kHz | 2.4 kHz | 2.4 kHz | 2.0 kHz | 2.0 kHz |
| RTTY/PKT/USER | 2.4 kHz | 2.4 kHz | 2.0 kHz | 2.0 kHz | 250/500 Hz*3 | $250 / 500 \mathrm{~Hz}$ *3 |

※1: You can select the bandwidth via menu selection 5-0. The first value (bandwidth) is factory default.
※2: You can select the bandwidth via menu selection 5-2. The first value (bandwidth) is factory default.
※3: You can select the bandwidth via menu selection 5-4. The first value (bandwidth) is factory default.
Note 1 - In the factory default condition, the SSB NAR 1 bandwidth is " $2.0 \mathrm{kHz} / 2.0 \mathrm{kHz}$ ( 2 nd IF/3rd IF)" and the SSB NAR 2 bandwidth is disabled. If you set the SSB NOR bandwidth to "ATT/6.0 kHz (2nd IF/3rd IF)" via menu selection 50, the NAR 1 bandwidth will be set to " $2.4 \mathrm{kHz} / 2.4 \mathrm{kHz}$ (2nd IF/3rd IF)" and the NAR 2 bandwidth will be set to " $2.0 \mathrm{kHz} /$ 2.0 kHz (2nd IF/3rd IF)" automatically.

Note 2 - The 2nd IF (8.2 MHz) 2.0-kHz BW filter (Yaesu P/N YF-114SN) and 250 Hz BW filter (Yaesu P/N YF-114CN) and 3rd IF ( 455 kHz ) 2.0-kHz BW filter (Yaesu P/N YF-110SN), 500 Hz BW filter (Yaesu P/N YF-115C) and 250 Hz BW filter (Yaesu P/N YF-110CN) are option.
Note 3 - The Sub Receiver use a double-conversion circuit with 47.21 MHz and 455 kHz intermediate frequencies. Both the 6.0 kHz and 2.4 kHz filters are selected automatically according to mode, and with the optional 500 Hz Collins mechanical filter (Yaesu P/N YF-115C) installed and enabled via menu programming, it can be selected for CW operation.

## Front Panel Controls

## 50. [TUNER] Button

This is the on/off switch for the MARK-V FT1000MP's Automatic Antenna Tuner.

Pressing this button momentarily places the antenna tuner in line between the transmitter final amplifier and the main antenna jack. Reception is not affected.

Pressing and holding this button for $1 / 2$ second while receiving in an amateur band activates the transmitter for a few seconds while the automatic antenna tuner rematches the antenna system impedance for minimum SWR. The resulting settings are automatically stored in one of the antenna tuner's 39 memories, for instant automatic recall later when the receiver is tuned near the same frequency.

## 51. VRF Indicator

This indicator glows red when the VRF feature is activated by pressing the [VRF] button on the Shuttle Jog.

## 52. VRF/MEM CH Knob

When the VRF feature is engaged, use this detended knob to tune the passband of the narrow input preselector filter manually for maximum receiver sensitivity (and out-of-band interference rejection).

At other times (when the VRF feature is "off"), this knob selects the operating memory channel when the memories are active (but not retuned). When the VFO or memory tune functions of the main display are active, turning this knob causes the Sub VFO display to temporarily show the frequencies of the memories (memory check), without otherwise affecting operation. The channel number of the selected memory is displayed at all times at the center right of the display (in front of "CH").

Pressing and holding this knob for $1 / 2$ second enables the "VFO Step" feature, which allows "channellizing" the VFO for quick frequency navigation. Menu Selection $\mathbf{1 - 5}$ sets the VFO Channel step size.


Note: VRF only functions on the $\mathbf{1 6 0 - 2 0 ~ M ~ A m a t e u r ~ B a n d s ~}$


## 1. S/PO Scale

Thirty-one bargraph segments indicate relative received signal strength (one S-unit $=6 \mathrm{~dB}$ ) from S-0 to $\mathrm{S} 9+60 \mathrm{~dB}$. On transmit, RF power output from 0 to 400 Watts is displayed.

## 2. IC/SWR/ALC/COMP Scale

Indicates final amplifier collector current (IC) from 0 to 30 amps, standing wave ratio (SWR) from 1.0 to 3.0 , speech compression from 0 to 30 dB , ALC (automatic level control) operating range, DC supply voltage level, or microphone audio input level.

## 3. Tuning Scale

This multi-function tuning scale provides a center tuning segment for zero beating CW stations, and twin bars ("goal posts") for accurate tuning of mark and space tones associated with digital modes, such as RTTY, Packet, and AMTOR.

## 4. MAIN BUSY

This appears whenever the Main receiver squelch is open (VFO-A).

## 5. SUB BUSY

This appears whenever the Sub receiver squelch is open (VFO-B).

## 6. TRANSMIT

This appears when the PTT is keyed and transmission is occurring. If transmission is inhibited for some reason (for example, attempting to transmit outside an amateur band), this indicator will blink.

## 7. FAST

Fast VFO tuning rate is active.
8. DUAL

This indicates that dual-receive operation is activated.

## 9. SPLIT

This indicator appears whenever split-frequency operation is activated.

## 10. LOCK

Front panel tuning knob and/or buttons are locked.

## 11. GEN

This appears whenever general coverage tuning is selected (when tuning outside an amateur band).

## 12. PRGM

Appears while tuning within programmed frequency limits in the PMS (Programmed Memory Scan) mode.

## 13. Tuning Offset Scale

Displays sub-resolution tuning steps or Clarifier offset in segmented increments.

When the VRF feature is engaged, this scale displays the peak position for the narrow-band "preselector" filter.

## 14. QMB (Quick Memory Bank)

This indicates that stored memories from the Quick Memory Bank are active for recall and operation.

## 15. VFO

VFO tuning or VFO operation is selected.

## 16. MEM

This indicator shows that memory operation is selected (by pressing the [VFO/MR] button).

## 17. M TUNE

Appears while retuning the frequency of a selected memory channel.
18. -/RPT/+

One of these segments lights, along with the "RPT" indicator, when the "repeater mode" function is activated in the FM mode, indicating the direction of TX offset.

## 19. Frequency Display

This displays the current operating frequency, and also provides alphanumeric character display of programming menu selections and settings.

## 20. TUNER

This indicator comes on when the automatic antenna tuner (ATU) is activated and in-line.

## 21. WAIT

Appears when the ATU is seeking the best impedance match with the antenna. It also flashes each time the transceiver microprocessor sends frequency update data to the ATU microprocessor (while you tune).

## 22. HI SWR

Appears when an abnormally high SWR condition exists that cannot be matched below 3.0:1.

## 23. RX/CLAR/TX

These appear indicating the selected Clarifier function ( $\mathrm{Rx}, \mathrm{Tx}$ or both). The Clarifier offset frequency $\pm 9.99$ kHz ) is shown in the sub-display immediately to the right.

## 24. ANT A/B

Indicates the antenna selected for operation (A or B) by the front panel ANT [A/B] switch (see item 18 on page 23).

## 25. CAT

External computer control of the transceiver is active.

## 26. CLEAR

Indicates the selected memory channel is not yet filled with data.

## 27. OFFSET

When enabled, this field shows the frequency difference (split offset) between Main VFO-A and Sub VFO-B.

## 28. Multi-Display Window

Displays either the Clarifier offset, memory channel frequency, split frequency offset, or CW pitch.

## 29. MEM F

Appears when the memory channel frequency appears in the multi-display panel.

## 30. GROUP

When the [M GRP] button is pressed, this indicates that the "memory recall" mode is engaged, and that scanning is limited to those memories in the currentlyselected group.

## 31. TRACK

Appears when the VFO Tracking feature is activated.

## 32. Memory Channel Box

During normal operation, the currently-selected memory group and memory channel number appear here. With the Menu Programming mode active, menu selection numbers are displayed.

## 33. M CK

Appears when the Memory Check mode is activated.

## 34. Sub Receiver S-Meter <br> Displays relative signal strength.

## 35. Sub Receiver Frequency Display

Displays the current sub-receiver frequency used during dual receive operation, and the transmit frequency during most split operation.

## 36. LOCK

Appears when the Sub VFO tuning knob is disabled (it still turns but does nothing).

## 37. Sub Receiver MODE

Displays the currently-selected operating mode for the Sub receiver.

## Top Panel Access \& Controls



The following controls are accessible beneath the removable panel on the top half of the transceiver case. Push the slide rearward and pry up the lid to expose the ALC UNIT circuit board and potentiometer controls. Most control settings are preset at the factory for normal operation. Should you desire to change a particular setting, use a small insulated screwdriver to rotate the desired potentiometer.

## 1. HPA-S

This control sets the audio level available from the sub receiver to headphone jack A ( 3.5 mm plug).

## 2. HPA-M

This control sets the audio level available from the main receiver to headphone jack $\mathbf{A}$ ( 3.5 mm plug).

## 3. HPB-S

This control sets the audio level available from the sub receiver to headphone jack B ( $1 / 4$-inch plug).

## 4. HPB-M

This control sets the audio level available from the main receiver to headphone jack B ( $1 / 4$-inch plug).

## 5. TUN-M

This control adjusts the tuning meter segment indications.

Do not adjust this control, by mistake, as this control will adversely affect meter tuning indication, and requires factory re-alignment!.

## 6. FM MIC

During FM operation, this control adjusts the microphone gain (and transmitter deviation). More clockwise settings produce a wider bandwidth signal.

NOTE: This control has been preset at the factory to produce the correct deviation with standard microphone levels. A deviation meter should be connected for proper readjustment, as it is difficult to determine the proper setting by ear. Remember that maximum deviation permitted on HF is $\pm 2.5 \mathrm{kHz}$.

## 7. VOX

This control sets the gain of the VOX circuit, to set the level of microphone audio needed to activate the transmitter during voice operation while the VOX button on the front panel is depressed.

## 8. DELAY (VOX Delay)

This control sets the hang time of the VOX circuit, between the moment you stop speaking, and the automatic switch from transmit back to receive. Adjust this for smooth VOX so the receiver is only activated when you want to listen.

## 9. A-VOX (ANTI-VOX TRIP)

This control sets the level of negative feedback of receiver audio to the microphone, to prevent receiver audio from activating the transmitter (via the microphone) during VOX (voice-actuated transmit/receive switching) operation. Adjustment is described in the Operation chapter.

## 10. PKT

This control adjusts the tuning meter segment indications for Packet center tuning.

## 11. RTTY

This control adjusts the tuning meter segment indications for RTTY center tuning.

## 12. CW

This control adjusts the tuning meter segment indications for CW center tuning. It should be adjusted such that the center segment lights up when your favorite pitch (as set by the CW PITCH control and confirmed by pressing the [SPOT] button) is received.

## Additional Note

The volume of the beep that sounds when a frontpanel button is pushed can be adjusted by turning a trimmer accessed via the small hole on the bottom cover of the transceiver. Insert a small, thin, insulated, flat screwdriver into the hole to adjust VR3001 for the desired beep volume. The Beep tone frequency is adjusted via menu selection 4-2; see page 101.


## Rear Panel Controls \& Connectors



## 1. ANT Coaxial Jacks

Connect your main antenna(s) here, using a typeM (PL-259) plug and coaxial feedline. These antenna ports are always used for transmission, and also are used for reception unless a separate receive antenna is also used for the main receiver. The internal antenna tuner affects only the antenna(s) connected here, and only during transmission.

## 2. REMOTE Jack

By plugging in a remote control keypad here, direct access to the MARK-V FT-1000MP CPU is provided for control functions such as contest memory keying, frequency, and function control. This jack may also be also used for remote control of the VL-1000 Linear Amplifier, if used.

## 3. CW SIDETONE Trimmer

Insert a small insulated screwdriver here and turn the trimmer inside to adjust the volume of the sidetone heard during CW keying (and when the [SPOT] button is pressed).

## 4. KEY 3-Contact Phone Jack

This $1 / 4$-inch phone jack accepts a CW key or keyer paddle. It is connected in parallel with the jack with the same name on the front panel (either or both may be used). A 2 -contact plug cannot be used in this jack. Key-up voltage is +5 V , and key-down current is 0.5 mA . Plug wiring is shown on page 4.

## 5. BACKUP Slide Switch

Keep this switch in the "ON" position to retain all memory and VFO settings during power-off periods. There is no need to turn this switch off unless you plan to store the transceiver for a long period without use.

## 6. CAT Serial DB-9 Jack

This 9-pin serial DB-9 jack allows external computer control of the MARK-V FT-1000MP. Connect a serial cable here and to the RS-232C COM port on your personal computer (no external interface is required). CATT command protocol and data formats are described in the CNT chapter, starting on page 86.

## 7. DVS-2 DIN Jack

This 7-pin input/output jack is for connection of the DVS-2 Digital Voice Recording option, described on page 81.

## 8. PACKET DIN Jack

This 5-pin input/output jack provides receiver audio and squelch signals, and accepts transmit (AFSK) audio and PTT control, from an external Packet TNC. Pinout is shown on pages 4 and 16. The receiver audio level at this jack is approximately 100 mV (@600 Ohms), preset by VR3010 on the AF Unit (see page 15 for access to this trimmer, if necessary).

## 9. RTTY DIN Jack

This 4-pin input/output jack provides connections for an RTTY terminal unit. Pinout is shown on pages 4 and 17. The receiver audio level at this jack is at a constant 100-mV (@600 Ohms) level. FSK keying at this jack is accomplished by a closure of the SHIFT line to ground by the terminal unit.

## 10. PTT Phono Jack

This input jack may be used to provide manual transmitter activation using a footswitch or other switching device. Its function is identical to the [MOX] button on the front panel. The same line is available at the PACKET and RTTY jacks for TNC control. Open-circuit voltage is +13.5 VDC , and closed-circuit current is 1.5 mA .

## 11. EXT ALC Phono Jack

This input jack accepts negative-going external ALC (Automatic Level Control) voltage from a linear amplifier, to prevent over-excitation by the transceiver. Acceptable input voltage range is 0 to -4 VDC .

## 12. PATCH Phono Jack

This input jack accepts transmitter audio - either AFSK or voice - for transmission. This line is mixed with the microphone audio input line, so the microphone should be disconnected if using this jack and mixing is not desired. Impedance is $500 \sim 600$ Ohms.

## 13. EXT SPKR Mini Phone Jack

This 2-contact output jack provides mixed receiver audio for an external loudspeaker, such as the SP-8. Inserting a plug into this jack disables the internal loudspeaker. Impedance is $4 \sim 8 \mathrm{Ohms}$.

## 14. AF OUT Mini Phone Jack

This 3-contact jack provides dual-channel low-level receiver output, for recording or external amplification. Peak signal level is 100 mVrms at 600 Ohms. Main receiver audio is on the left channel (tip), and sub receiver audio is on the right channel (ring). A stereo amplifier or recorder is recommended, to record each receiver's audio separately when dual reception is enabled. The front panel AF GAIN controls and the [AF REV] switch setting in the top access panel do not affect the signals at this jack.

## 15. GND Terminal Post

Use this terminal to connect the transceiver to a good earth ground, for safety and optimum performance. Use a large diameter, short braided cable.

## 16. BAND DATA DIN Jack

This 8-pin output jack provides control signals for the FL-7000/VL-1000 Solid-State Linear Amplifier, including band selection data to automatically set the Linear or Tuner to the same band as the main display of the transceiver. Band Data jack connections are shown on page 4.

## 17. +13.8V Phono Jack

This output jack provides regulated, separately fused 13.8 VDC at up to 200 mA , to power an external device such as a packet TNC. Make sure your device does not require more current (if it does, use a separate power source). Attempting to draw more power from here will blow the internal fuse behind this jack. Should this occur, replace the fuse (as explained on page 114).

## 18. RX ANT Phono Jacks (In/Out)

These antenna jacks are provided for connection for a separate receive-only antenna, activated when the switch with the same name on the front panel is pressed. An antenna connected here can be used by both the Main and Sub Receivers.

## 19. TRV Transverter Drive Output Jack

This jack provides a low level RF output for use with a transverter. Maximum output is approximately 100 mVrms at 50 Ohms ( -6 dBm ).

## 20. TX GND Jack (normally disabled)

When enabled by the [LIN] switch, this output jack connects inside the MARK-V FT-1000MP to a set of relay contacts which short together (to chassis ground) whenever the transmitter is active. This allows transmit/receive switching of an external device such as a linear amplifier. This jack is disabled at the factory, to avoid the clicking of the relay when it is not used.

Maximum ratings for these relay contacts are 500 mA @ 100 VAC, 200 mA @ 60 VDC or 1 A @ 30 VDC. Before connecting an external device, make sure its switching requirements will not exceed these limits. If your amplifier requires higher current, or has higher voltage switching requirements, an external switching device must be used.

## 21. LIN Linear Amplifier Relay Switch

To enable the TX GND jack when you are connecting a external linear amplifier, move this switch to its "ON" position.

## 22. DC IN Jack

Connect this 6-pin Molex socket to the Power Cable from the supplied FP-29 AC Power Supply. This socket provides +30 V DC,+13.8 V DC , and control signals for the MARK-V FT-1000MP.

## Before Starting

Before plugging in the transceiver, check your installation to make sure your AC voltage is correct, and that your ground and antenna are connected as described in the Installation chapter. Then preset the following controls as indicated:
[POWER], [ANT RX], [MOX], [VOX], and [AF REV] buttons all off
AGC selector to AUTO
[IPO] button to off
AF GAIN and SUB AF knobs matched at approximately 9 o'clock
MIC, PROC, RF PWR, MONI, SQL, SUB SQL, and
NB knobs all counterclockwise
RF GAIN knob fully clockwise
SHIFT, WIDTH, and NOTCH knobs 12 o'clock (detent)
[LOCK], [FAST], [SPOT], [BK-IN], and [KEYER] switches all off.
Connect your microphone and CW key/paddle, then plug the AC cord into the wall outlet.

## MARK-V FT-1000MP Menu Programming

The MARK-V FT-1000MP incorporates a wealth of operating functions and features. For flexibility in configuring these capabilities, and to keep the front panel controls to a minimum, an internal Menu Programming routine is used. This allows customizing the functions via menu selections that previously required many elaborate DIP switch settings, power-on/button holding routines, or additional front and rear panel controls/ switches. This permits each rig to have a custom "personality" that specifically matches your operating requirements, with the capability for easy modification as your requirements change.

Menu programming is enabled by pressing the [FAST] button, followed by [ENT]. You may then rotate the VRF/MEM CH knob to display the desired setting. Each of the settings can be changed or customized, as you like, in this mode. For clarity's sake, transceiver functions that have several settings or options are referenced to the Menu Programming chapter separately, where details of programming are covered. Descriptions for most transceiver functions in this chapter assume default (factory-configured) transceiver settings.

There also are some "short-cuts" to certain Menu settings, and these will be described in the appropriate chapters to follow.

## Receiving

Note: the following procedure assumes the transceiver has not been used before, and not already set for Dual reception. If "DUAL" appears on the display when you switch on the set in the next step, you should press the blue [DUAL] button to return to the single-receiver mode (for now).

Press the [POWER] switch on. The meter and display should light up. If the display is too bright for your taste, it can be switched to a more subdued level using menu selection 3-4 (see page 100).


Take a moment to study the display. You should see "VFO" at the bottom, with the operating frequency of the Main VFO just above the main tuning knob. To the right of that is the Clarifier offset (" 0.00 "), followed by the memory channel number ("1-01" CH by default). At the right side of the display are the current mode and frequency of SUB VFO-B, which we'll talk about later.

## Amateur Band Selection

Press a keypad key (between the two tuning knobs) to select a band for which your antenna is designed. Refer to the white "MHz" labels, and press the appropriate one.


## Key Beeper

Pressing a front-panel button normally produces a beep. Its volume is independent of receiver volume, and can be set by adjusting a trimmer via a hole on the bottom panel of the transceiver case.
To change the pitch of the beeper, recall menu section 4-2 (page 101) and select the desired pitch (between 220 and 7040 Hz ) by turning the dial. You can also disable the beeper via menu selection 4-1 (also page 101).

## Receiving

## MODE Selection

Press the [MODE] button (to the left of the main tuning knob) corresponding to the mode you wish to operate - for now, we sug-
 gest an SSB mode: USB if you have selected a band above 10 MHz , or LSB otherwise. The green LED in each button indicates the selected band, and a pair of LEDs within the bandwidth panel (to the left of the mode buttons) indicate which IF filter pair is currently selected for that mode.

CW and RTTY have "reverse" modes that are selected by pressing their button twice (see the box at the right), and AM Synchronous tuning is activated in the same manner. Also, Packet operation can be toggled between LSB and FM (for 29 MHz operation) in the same way. These special features are covered later.

Additionally, notice that the bargraph meter format changes to the appropriate tuning display for the selected mode (covered later).

If you have selected an SSB mode, the red LED in the [NOR] button should be lit. If not, press [NOR] key. This bandwidth provides good fidelity for SSB reception and should be used unless QRM from stations on adjacent frequencies becomes a problem (as described later).

Adjust the AF GAIN knob for comfortable volume on signals or noise in the loudspeaker or headphones. The small SUB AF knob (to the under the AF GAIN knob) is used with the Sub VFO operation and is explained in greater detail later.


## Special Note for CW Mode (Reverse CW sideband)

When you switch modes between CW and USB, you may notice that the frequency of received signal stays the same (even though the panel frequency may change slightly). Also notice that the pitch of a received signal decreases as you increase the dial frequency.
However, switching to LSB from CW normally requires retuning the desired station. This can be especially inconvenient if you enjoy working the lower HF bands ( 40 meters and below) where LSB mode is used.

To eliminate the need for retuning in this situation, you may switch the receiver CW carrier oscillator injection to the reverse side (LSB). When you press [CW] button, you should notice that the green LED in the USB mode button blinks for a second or two. This informs you of the default carrier offset (upper) for CW. To switch to lower injection side, simply press the [CW] button again; you will see the displayed frequency shift and the LSB LED will blink.
When using the reverse sideband (LSB) for CW reception, you can freely switch between LSB and CW without having to retune a station. Note that in LSB and CW modes the received signal pitch now increases as you increase the dial frequency.
To return the receiver to the default (upper) sideband, simply press [CW] again.


Operating Hint - An added benefit from this feature is QRM rejection. If you have interference on a CW station that the IF SHIFT does not easily eliminate, you can try switching to the reverse sideband, retuning the signal, and trying the IF SHIFT again.

## Receiving

## Tuning the MARK-V FT-1000MP

Tuning is accomplished in several ways, with each method having its own advantages; they are:

O Main \& Sub VFO Knob Tuning
O Shuttle Jog Tuning
O Panel \& Microphone Down/Up keys
O VFO Channel Stepping

## VFO Knob

Rotating the Main VFO-A knob tunes the transceiver according to the selected tuning step size and encoder tuning rate. Both of these settings are configured via menu selections 1-3 \& 1-4 (see page 99). The table below shows
 the available tuning step sizes and their default settings.

| Control | Tuning Steps | Default Step |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MAIN VFO-A knob SUB VFO-B knob | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.625 / 1.25 / 2.5 / \\ 5 / 10 / 20 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{gathered}$ | 10 Hz |
| Shuttle Jog | 13 preset | - |
| DOWN( $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ )/UP( $\mathbf{A}$ ) <br> Pushbuttons | Normal | 100 kHz |
|  | w/[FAST] knob | 1 MHz |
| VRF/MEM CH <br> CH. Stepping | Normal | 10 kHz |
| CLAR <br> (Clarifier) | $\begin{array}{\|c} 0.625 / 1.25 / 2.5 / \\ 5 / 10 / 20 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{array}$ | 10 Hz |

For faster dial tuning rates with either the VFO knob or mic UP/DOWN buttons, press the [FAST] button below and to the left of the Main VFO knob ("FAST" appears). This selects the VFO speed, which can be switched between $4 x$ (default) and $2 x$ in menu selection 1-0 (see page 99). This affects the $\Delta \mathrm{F}$ per VFO knob rotation without changing the default tuning step size.

| Default <br> Tuning <br> Step | $\Delta$ F for 1 revolution of VFO knob |  |  |  |
| ---: | ---: | :---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | (X2) Encoder Rate | (X4) Encoder Rate |  |  |
|  | Normal | FAST | Normal | FAST |
| 0.625 Hz | 312 Hz | 3.12 kHz | 625 Hz | 6.25 kHz |
| 1.25 Hz | 625 Hz | 6.25 kHz | 1.25 kHz | 12.5 kHz |
| 2.5 Hz | 1.25 Hz | 12.5 kHz | 2.5 kHz | 25 kHz |
| 5 Hz | 2.5 Hz | 25 kHz | 5 kHz | 50 kHz |
| 10 Hz | 5 Hz | 50 kHz | 10 kHz | 100 kHz |
| 20 Hz | 10 Hz | 100 kHz | 20 kHz | 200 kHz |

## Shuttle Jog

The Shuttle Jog ring is more efficient for large frequency excursions, or whenever QSY requires spinning the VFO knob a lot, while still providing positive control with a comfortable feel.

Rotating the Shuttle Jog away from the center detent in either direction starts constant tuning. The farther the Shuttle Jog is moved from center, the larger the progressive frequency steps (and QSY).
 There are 13 preset frequency steps incrementing through the arc of the Shuttle Jog (from 10 Hz ~ 100 kHz). The Shuttle Jog speed (encoder rate) is also configurable from $1 \sim 100$ msec. via menu selection 1-1 on page 99.

Recall that the step size varies as the Shuttle Jog is turned, while the encoder rate is fixed. The effect of tuning faster as the Shuttle Jog is rotated actually comes from jumping to progressively larger tuning increments, as encoder rate remains constant.

## Downloaded by RadioAmateur.EU

## FAST Button Operation

By default, the front panel [FAST] button is a presson, press-off type. However, you can change it to a momentary type by recalling menu selection 8-0 (see page 104) and changing the default setting.

## Receiving

## Panel Up/Down Buttons

Press the large UP( $\mathbf{A}$ ) and DOWN( $\mathbf{\nabla})$ buttons below the keypad to step around the band in
 $100-\mathrm{kHz}$ steps, and then tune around the band a bit with the tuning knob.

If the "FAST" icon appears on the display, pressing these buttons will cause stepping in 1 MHz increments.

## Microphone Up/Dwn Buttons

If your microphone has UP and DWN buttons, (such as the $\mathbf{M H}-31 \mathrm{B8D}$ ) you can press them momentarily to tune in $10-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps, or hold them to start VFO scanning. If it has a FST button, you can use it to duplicate the function of the [FAST] key on the transceiver front panel.

## VFO Channel Stepping

This feature utilizes the VRF/MEM CH knob at the upper right corner, and is unique because it allows "channellizing" the VFO for quick, yet precise, frequency navigation. For example, setting this feature to 1 kHz pro-
 vides an easy wasy of steping around an SSB band, looking for activity. Many bands such as AM broadcast, HF maritime, aeronautical, and citizen's band incorporate assigned channels using discrete frequency steps. By configuring this feature for the service in interest, you can hop from one channel to the next without having to zero in (manually) each station's signal with the VFO knob.

To enable operation using the VFO Step feature, it first must be enabled by press and holding the VRF/ MEM CH knob for $1 / 2$ second.

Once enabled, rotating VRF/MEM CH knob as you would to tune a channelized FM rig. While VFO channel stepping is enabled, "----" appears in the channel number display, until the knob is pressed in again to disable channel stepping. Channel stepping is configured by menu selection 1-5 on page 99; also see General Coverage Reception.

To disable the VFO Step feature, just press the VRF/ MEM CH knob momentarily.

## Display Settings

Display Mode - By default, switching to and from CW, PKT or RTTY modes causes the display to change by the amount of offset selected by the CW PITCH (page 56), RTTY, and PKT tone \& offset configurations (pages 15 and 16). If you prefer the display to remain unchanged when switching modes, this can be done by setting menu selection $3-0$ to BFO (carrier) display on page 100. However, the actual carrier offsets configured by the menu selections, relative to the display and IF bandpass are unaffected, regardless of the setting for menu selection 3-0.

Display Resolution - Although the MARK-V FT1000MP DDS (Direct Digital Synthesizer) tunes in frequency increments as small as .625 Hz , display resolution is limited to 10 Hz . The 10 Hz and 100 Hz digits display can be turned off, as desired, if smaller frequency resolution is not needed (tuning steps are not affected).

Select the desired display resolution via menu selection 3-1 on page 100.


## VFO \& Panel Locking Schemes

The locking scheme for the MAIN VFO-A [LOCK] button offers three choices. By default, pressing the [LOCK] button so that "LOCK" appears only disables the tuning knob (it still turns, but does nothing). However, it can disable all front panel keys, or else all except the primary function keys. To select the locking scheme, recall menu function 8-1, as shown on page 104.
Important! - Holding the [LOCK] button without releasing it activates the dual VFO tracking feature, which is discussed later in the chapter.

## Receiving

## Alternate VFO Operation

## ("Front \& Rear•E/FO)

If you press the keypad band key for the same band that you are already operating on, the display will shift to a different frequency in the same band (the bottom of the band by default). Pressing the same band key again switches you back to the frequency you were on before. What you have here are two completely independent VFO selections for each band, selectable by each band's keypad key. You can think of the VFO for every band having a "front" and "rear" half that can be swapped for operation by toggling the band key. You can tune, select a mode and a bandwidth for each of these two VFO halves in each band, and they will be remembered until you return to this "sub receiver" selection.

## Toggle VFOs



A practical use of this feature is to configure the front VFO for phone operation, and the rear half for CW operation on the same band (see the illustration above).

For example, if one of your VFOs is set to the SSB portion of the band (and in an SSB mode), press the keypad key for that same band, tune to the low end of the band, and press the [CW] mode button. You can consider this your CW VFO. Now press the band key again several times, and notice that operation toggles between the SSB and CW VFO halves. You can also select different IF bandwidths as well as modes for the two halves (and even different Clarifier settings). Note that this feature is not related to the MAIN VFO-A and SUB VFO-B scheme - dual receive and split operation will be covered later.

## VFO Selection \& Receiver Muting

Above the Main and Sub VFO knobs are a pair of button/LEDs labeled RX and TX. The illuminated green "RX" LED indicates the VFO(s) controlling the receiver, while the red "TX" LED shows the VFO controlling the transmit frequency. As we will see later on in dual and split operation, these buttons can configure semi-duplex operation as you choose.

You can mute the Main or Sub VFO at any time by pressing the RX button/LED above the corresponding VFO knob. The LED blinks while the receiver remains muted; simply press the button again to unmute.

## Keypad Frequency Entry

Frequencies can be entered directly, if desired, as follows:

Press [ENT] at the lower right corner of the keypad (the leftmost operating frequency digit will blink). Then, referring to the yellow numbers on the keypad, enter the digits of the new frequency, from left to right (1-4 -2-5-0-0-0), followed by [ENT] again. As you enter the numbers, the next digit to be entered will blink on the display. You can use the $\operatorname{DOWN}(\boldsymbol{\nabla})$ and $\mathbf{U P}(\mathbf{\Delta})$ buttons below the keypad to reposition the blinking digit location as desired (but ignore the direction labels on these buttons).


Only when you press [ENT] the second time will the operating frequency actually change, so if you decide to remain on the original frequency after starting to key in a new one, you can cancel any entered digits by pressing [SUB(CE)] ("Clear Entry," the yellow label at the lower left corner of the keypad) instead of [ENT]. Note that, to enter frequencies below 10 MHz , you must key in the leading zeros.

That's all there is to tuning Main VFO-A. Sub VFO$B$ has a lot more features of its own, which we'll look at in detail later. First, however, let's look at some other important receiver features.

## Receiving

## Signal Tuning Meter Indications

The MARK-V FT-1000MP incorporates several display indications that make tuning stations a simple and accurate task:

Tuning Scale - When either CW, RTTY or PKT operation is selected, the tuning meter appears beneath the IC/SWR meter scale, as shown below.


In the CW mode, when you tune a signal near the center of the receiver passband, the boundary arrows light, and the upper signal strength segments increase as you slowly tune the VFO knob. The idea is to tune for maximum indication, and so that a lone center marker illuminates in the lower tuning meter (the boundary arrows turn off when the marker is centered). If you detune, the arrows illuminate, indicating that you need to re-center the marker.



Correctrly-Tuned CW Station

For RTTY and Packet, dual segments appear (representing the mark and space tones), and in this case optimum tuning is achieved when even balance and maximum separation between the dual segments occur. The minimum separation between the segments is proportional to the mark and space tone shift (170 $\mathrm{Hz}, 425 \mathrm{~Hz}$ or 850 Hz ). We will cover more about RTTY and Packet operation later.

## RTTY/PKT TUNING


"Peak-Hold" Feature - During receive, the S-Meter segments respond instantaneously to the relative signal strength (in S-Units) of stations. The meter "peakhold" circuitry keeps the right-most bargraph segment on for a user-selectable time delay from 10 msec up to 2 seconds. The peak-hold feature is off by default, but you can enable it and select the desired delay time via menu function 3-7.


## Receiving

## Expanded Tuning Scale

The bargraph segment meter above the MAIN VFOA frequency display serves as a triple mode enhanced tuning scale. By default, it displays relative Clarifier offset, and as you rotate the CLAR knob (either Rx or Tx Clarifier), the normally centered marker segment moves left or right, indicating the relative displaced ("clarified") Rx or Tx frequency from the original. Be sure to see page 49 for more details on Clarifier operation.


When the VRF feature is engaged, the segments briefly indicate the peak position for the narrow bandpass "preselector" when you are turning the VRF/MEM CH knob. Be sure to see page 44 for more details on VRF operation.


Alternately, you can have the segments expand outwardly as you tune either direction from the nearest displayed frequency. This lets you view tuning increments smaller than 10 Hz (the maximum display resolution).

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 0 0....:........|................ } 0 \\
& \begin{array}{l}
7191919 \\
1.210 .1015
\end{array}
\end{aligned}
$$

The rate and distance of segment displacement in either mode are proportional to the selected tuning step size and depend on whether or not the [FAST] button is engaged. The tuning meter mode is selected by menu selection 3-2.

## AM Synchronous Tuning

Audio distortion of AM stations due to carrier fading is common. Synchronous tuning reduces this phenomenon by receiving the station in "LSB" while re-injecting an unfading carrier. The benefit of this technique is that the re-injected carrier is phase-locked to carrier of the original station, reducing the effects of fading and improving signal fidelity over that of conventional AM detection.

To activate AM synchronous detection, press the [AM] button twice (so the green LED inside the button blinks). The tuning meter format changes to that below. Slowly tune across the signal until the lone center segment appears (see below).

## AM SYNCHRONOUS TUNING



## Sub-Display Mode Selection

The small window to the right of the main frequency display can contain several different readouts, selected by menu selection 3-5.

These include:
Clarifire - Displays "clarified" frequency as offset from the original frequency.


Channel Freq. - Displays the operating frequency contained in the current memory
 channel providing "What if?" information while you are operating on a VFO.

Offset - Displays the frequency difference between the Main VFO and Sub VFO fre-
 quencies.

A1 (CW) Pitch - Displays the current CW pitch setting.


Whichever selection you choose, if you activate the Clarifier during operation, its display will over-ride any other (non-Clarifier) settings you may have set via menu selection 3-5.

## Receiving

## General Coverage Reception

You may have already noticed that if you tune outside one of the amateur bands (actually, outside of the $500-\mathrm{kHz}$ segment that includes each band), "GEN" appears in a box at the left side of the display. On such frequencies, the transmitter and antenna tuner are disabled. If you try to transmit, "TRANSMIT" will blink. This confirms that transmission has been inhibited by the microprocessor.

Also, such frequencies are ignored by the band selection keys, so if you tune a VFO to a frequency outside of a ham band, you will have to store it in a memory (as described on page 64) if you want to be able to recall it quickly later. Otherwise, as soon as you press a band key, the general coverage frequency will be lost as the VFO reverts to the (ham-band) frequency it was on when the band was last changed.

Once you become familiar with the memories, you will find this really doesn't present a problem, as each memory can be tuned just like a VFO, and stored into another channel without having to go through a VFO.

Aside from the above, general coverage reception provides all of the features available on ham frequencies, including dual channel reception, digital modes, and diversity reception, described on the following pages. A wealth of interesting broadcasts can be found outside the amateur bands, including:

International Shortwave Bands (see table) Maritime \& Aeronautical Communications
News Services \& Diplomatic/Embassy Traffic Military Communications
While tuning outside an amateur band, you may find the $\mathbf{U P}(\mathbf{\Lambda})$ and $\operatorname{DOWN}(\boldsymbol{\nabla})$ keys (below the keypad) to be extremely valuable for quick frequency change. The 100 kHz steps provided by these keys are ideal for moving quickly through, for example, the 15 MHz international AM broadcast band.

## Dealing with Interference

The MARK-V FT-1000MP includes a wide range of special features to suppress the many types of interference that may be encountered on the HF bands. However, real world interference conditions are constantly changing, so optimum setting of the controls is somewhat of an art, requiring familiarity with the types of interference and the subtle effects of some of the controls. Therefore, the following information is provided as general guidelines for typical situations, and a starting point for your own experimentation.

The MARK-V FT-1000MP's interference-fighting circuitry begins in its "RF" stages, and continues throughout the entire receiver section.

## VRF (Variable RF Front-end Filter)

The VRF feature allows you to engage a narrow band-pass "preselector" filter into the receiver's RF circuit path. The added selectivity can be a tremendous help in minimizing potential interference from strong out-of-band signals, especially in a multi-transmitter operating environment.

To activate the VRF feature, press VRFIMEM CH the [VRF] button on the Shuttle Jog, bwi then turn the VRF/MEM CH knob to peak the signal or background noise level. When the VRF feature is engaged, the red "VRF" LED, located on
 the left side of the VRF/MEM CH knob, will be illuminated.

If a potentially-interfering signal is very near your current operating frequency (for example, an SSB station operating near 3.80 MHz while you are on 3.52 MHz ), additional protection may be realized by deliberately mistuning the VRF so as to place more "roll-off" of the undesired signal. In this example, tuning the VRF for peak response at 3.40 MHz will cause additional attenuation to be placed on the strong signal at 3.80 MHz . Particularly on the lower frequency bands, there will be no loss of useful sensitivity with moderate de-tuning, but interference rejection will be significantly enhanced.

## Front End Selections:

Amp Selection, IPO \& ATT
The best receiver front-end selection will depend on background noise at the time, the presence or absence of strong signals, and whether or not you want to hear very weak signals. If the front end is set for too much gain, background noise will make listening difficult, and very strong signals on other frequencies may cause intermodulation interference, masking weaker signals. On the other hand, if the front end is set for too little gain (or too much attenuation), very weak signals will not be heard.

When evaluating the selections below, remember that if you can hear band noise increase when your antenna is connected, you have adequate sensitivity; any further early-stage gain is not needed.

## "Wide Band" and "Tuned" Preamp Selection

Three high-performance FET RF amplifiers are utilized in the MARK-V FT-1000MP receiver front end. A single wide-band amp is provided for good general allaround performance, along with dual tuned amplifiers: one optimized for 24~30 MHz, the other for $1.8 \sim 7 \mathrm{MHz}$ (see illustration). The Tuned preamp is especially useful when operating from a quiet location on 10 meters, while on the low bands the Tuned preamp's low gain provides optimum strong-signal performance. Each amplifier is selected automatically as you tune or change bands; however, you can disable the tuned amplifier pair and only use the wide-band amp via menu selection 8-4.

Note that the Tuned preamp only operates in the 1.8~7 and 24~30 amateur bands. If you tune outside of an amateur band while using the Tuned preamp, the transceiver will automatically switch over to the "Flat" (Wide-band) preamp. The effects of this design are:
(1) When tuning outside of a low-frequency amateur


## Dealing with Interference

band (for example, tuning from 1.999 .99 MHz to 2.000.00 MHz), the higher gain of the "Flat" preamp will cause the background noise to increase suddenly (and decrease again if you tune back inside the 160 -meter band).
(2) When tuning outside of a high-frequency amateur band (for example, tuning from 28.000 .00 MHz to 27.999.99 MHz), the higher gain of the Tuned premap will cause the background noise to decrease suddenly (and increase again if you tune back inside the 10-meter band).
(3) When operating on the 14 MHz band, the Tuned and Flat preamps have basically identical gains. Very little difference in performance will be observed, inside or outside the 20-meter band.

## IPO (Intercept Point Optimization)

Normally, the front-end FET RF amplifiers $\square$ provide maximum sensitivity for weak signals. During typical conditions on lower frequencies (such as strong overloading from signals on adjacent frequencies), the RF amplifiers can be bypassed by pressing the [IPO] button so the green LED is on. This improves the dynamic range and IMD (intermodulation distortion) characteristics of the receiver, at a slight reduction of sensitivity. On frequencies below about 10 MHz , you generally will want to keep the [IPO] button engaged, as the preamplifiers are usually not needed at these frequencies.

## ATT (RF Attenuator)

Even with the IPO function on, extremely strong local signals can still degrade reception. So if you still notice the effects of overloading, or if the signals
 you want to listen to are very strong, you can use the ATT selector to insert 6, 12, or $18-\mathrm{dB}$ of RF attenuation in front of the RF amplifier. If background noise causes the S-meter to deflect on clear channels, turn the ATT selector clockwise until the S-meter drops to about S-1 (the white area at the left end of the top meter scale). This setting optimizes the trade-off between sensitivity and interference immunity. Also, once you have tuned in a station you want to work, you may want to reduce sensitivity further (or add more attenuation) by turning the ATT control to a more clockwise setting. This reduces the strength of all signals (and noise) and can make reception more comfortable, important especially during long QSOs.

When looking for weak signals on a quiet band you will want maximum sensitivity, so the IPO should be disabled and the ATT selector should be set to " 0 ." This situation is typical during quiet times on frequencies above 21 MHz , and when using a small or nega-tive-gain receiving antenna on other bands.

## AGC (Automatic Gain Control) Selection

When tuning around the band looking for signals, the AGC selector is usually best kept in the "AUTO" position, where AGC decay is automatically selected according to the operating mode. You can manually select receiver AGC; however, a few points about AGC and receiver recovery time need to be pointed out.

For SSB reception, the "FAST" position allows the receiver gain to recover quickly after tuning past strong signals or when fast fading occurs. However, once you have a station tuned in, reception will usually be more comfortable if you switch to the "SLOW" position (keeping the receiver from picking up low-level noise during pauses in speech).

For CW reception, when several signals are present in the passband, the "FAST" position can avoid AGC "pumping" (gain fluctuations) caused by strong undesired signals.

For AM reception, the "SLOW" position is usually better, and for 300-baud packet and RTTY/AMTOR, the "FAST" or "OFF" positions will usually give the fewest errors/retries.

## RF Gain Setting

When tuned to a moderate strength signal, if low level background noise is still present after setting the ATT selector, try reducing the RF GAIN control from the fully clockwise position. This reduces the signal input to the first mixer via a PIN diode attenuator and causes the minimum S-meter reading to move up he scale, often clearing up the background noise and putting the desired signal more "in the clear." Remember, however, to return this control fully clockwise when you want to receive weak signals, or read low levels on the S-meter. Also read the box on this page.

## Note on AGC

The AGC "OFF" position disables the overload-protection normally provided by the AGC circuitry. If the RF GAIN control is left fully clockwise in this condition, the RF and IF amplifiers can be easily overloaded (causing distortion) when a strong signal is received. Correct the overload either by setting the AGC selector to another position, or by turning the RF GAIN control counterclockwise to set receiver gain to a comfortable level.

## Dealing with Interference

## Noise Blanker

Press the [NB] button to activate the IF Noise NB Blanker.

The two noise blanker circuits in the MARK-
V FT-1000MP are provided for two different types of pulse noise; (A) a narrow-pulse blanker for short pulse noise such as from switching transients, automobile ignitions, and power lines, and (B) a wide pulse blanker for longer duration man-made pulse noise. This noise blanker can sometimes also reduce the level of static crashes from electrical storms You can select the desired noise blanker circuit ("narrow" or "wide") and its blanking level via menu selection 2-8.

In urban environments, there may be several or even dozens of local noise sources; these may combine in such a way as to make detection of a clear "impulse" impossible. The IF noise blanker may, however, reduce the noise level significantly, allowing the EDSP Noise Reduction feature to reduce the noise even further.

If the blanker seems to distort a signal you're listening to, reduce the setting for optimum readability, or turn it off. During periods of extreme signal density (such as a contest), the noise blanker is best left off.

## IF Filter (Bandwidth) Selection

There are two banks of selectable filters, one each for both the 8.215 MHz 2nd IF and 455 kHz 3rd IF in the Main Receiver. Filter
 selections can be cascaded for versatility in combatting QRM and tailoring received audio. From the factory, 2nd IF 500 Hz and 2.4 kHz filters and 3rd IF 2.4 kHz filter are provided. Other filters can be ordered from your Yaesu dealer. Installation instructions are covered on page 113 and filter menu selections (5-0 through $5-7$ ) on pages 101 and 102 . The illustration at the bottom of the page provides a representation of filter selection in the MARK-V FT-1000MP.

Select the desired bandwidth by pressing one of the [BANDWIDTH] buttons. The LEDs inside each button glow red while selected.

In the AM mode, the [NOR] ( $6-\mathrm{kHz}$ ) AM-wide bandwidth is typically selected for both the 2nd \& 3rd IF (labeled THRU on the bottom of the 2nd IF column). This gives the highest fidelity, and is best on strong AM signals (and particularly music). The effects of the SHIFT and WIDTH controls in this wide bandwidth are subtle, but they can be helpful in fine tuning the audio characteristics. For weaker AM signals, or where adjacent channel interference is present, the [NAR 1] (2.4 kHz bandwidth) offers a compromise between interference rejection and fidelity. In this case, the SHIFT and WIDTH controls can be used quite effectively to improve fidelity (see the illustrations).

However, even better reception of AM signals under difficult conditions can usually be had by switching to an SSB mode (whichever gives the clearest reception), and superb reception of weak signals is often possible using diversity reception, described on page 46.

In SSB modes, the [NAR 2] ( 2.0 kHz bandwidth) button can sharply cut interference from unwanted signals on either side of the desired signal (although with some necessary loss of fidelity). In CW, the [NOR] (2.0 kHz or 2.4 kHz bandwidth) is often convenient to give "a wide view" of the band when tuning around, but once a signal of interest has been found and centered in the passband, the [NAR 1] ( 500 Hz bandwidth) or [NAR 2] ( 250 Hz bandwidth) selections are much better.

In addition to selecting various filter combinations, you have several features that can be used singly, or in combination to eliminate or reduce the interference to an acceptable level. Although their use requires little more than rotating a control, it is good to have knowledge on how each function works and the effect on the QRM encountered.

## Main receiver (VFO-A) IF Bandwidth Filter Selection

| MODE | NOR |  | NAR 1 |  | NAR 2 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\begin{gathered} \text { 2nd IF } \\ (8.2 \mathrm{MHz}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3rd IF } \\ (455 \mathrm{kHz}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 2nd IF } \\ (8.2 \mathrm{MHz}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3rd IF } \\ (455 \mathrm{kHz}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 2nd IF } \\ (8.2 \mathrm{MHz}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3rd IF } \\ (455 \mathrm{kHz}) \end{gathered}$ |
| SSB | $2.4 \mathrm{kHz} / \mathrm{AT}{ }^{* 1}$ | $2.4 / 6.0 \mathrm{kHz}^{* 1}$ | 2.0 (2.4) kHz | 2.0 (2.4) kHz | N/A (2.0 kHz) | $\mathrm{N} / \mathrm{A}(2.0 \mathrm{kHz})$ |
| CW | 2.0/2.4 kHz*2 | $2.0 / 2.4 \mathrm{kHz}^{* 2}$ | 500 Hz | 500 Hz | 250 Hz | 250 Hz |
| AM | ATT | 6.0 kHz | 2.4 kHz | 2.4 kHz | 2.0 kHz | 2.0 kHz |
| RTTY/PKT/USER | 2.4 kHz | 2.4 kHz | 2.0 kHz | 2.0 kHz | $250 / 500 \mathrm{~Hz}^{* 3}$ | $250 / 500 \mathrm{Hz*3}$ |

※1: You can select the bandwidth via menu selections $5-0$. The forward value (bandwidth) is factory default.
※2: You can select the bandwidth via menu selections 5-2. The forward value (bandwidth) is factory default.
$※ 3$ : You can select the bandwidth via menu selections 5-4. The forward value (bandwidth) is factory default.

## Dealing with Interference

## WIDTH Control

We just saw that specific IF filters can be selected to limit the receive bandpass to a pre-set width (essentially the total width of the installed filter). In a crowded band, you ideally want to narrow the bandwidth just to the point where the unwanted signal is attenuated while still retaining enough bandpass to recover the desired station. In real-life band conditions, however, this ideal bandwidth is often somewhere "in-between" the several selectable filter bandwidths.

The WIDTH control can be used in all modes except FM to continuously narrow or broaden the bandpass skirt (within the limit of the selected filter) for the best skirt shaping and optimum cutoff and interference rejection during
 each QRM situation. Unlike older types of width controls that adjust both sides of the filter slope at the same time, the MARK-V FT-1000MP's WIDTH control narrows the passband from either the upper or lower side (see illustration below). Thus, you only narrow the side of the bandpass where the QRM is located.

The center detent on the outer WIDTH control provides maximum bandwidth, which is equal to the selectivity of the filter used with the operating mode. Clock-
wise rotation moves the upper skirt of the IF passband lower in frequency, and counter-clockwise rotation moves the lower skirt upwards. If a QRM condition occurs after tuning in a station, slowly rotate the control in the direction where the interference is reduced while the station is still workable. As you rotate the control you will hear the audio response change as the passband is narrowed. If the QRM is very close, the amount of bandwidth reduction necessary to cut the QRM may leave the desired station's audio unrecoverable, or it may not be possible to entirely eliminate the QRM.

When the QRM is all above or all below the desired signal it is usually only necessary to rotate the WIDTH control either to the left or right to cut the interference from the receiver passband. The SHIFT control (covered next) will also work for this, but may introduce interference from the other side of the signal.

When you have activated the IDBT feature by pressing the [IDBT] button on the Shuttle Jog, the EDSP (Contour) filter's passband width reduces according to the WITDH knob setting. That is, the IF bandwidth and the EDSP bandwidth will be matched, according to the setting of the WIDTH control knob's position.


WIDTH Action



Using WIDTH control to reduce QRM

## Dealing with Interference

## SHIFT Control

The SHIFT control tunes the relative position of the receiver IF passband with respect to the displayed frequency in all modes except FM. The control is detented in the center position, which represents the passband center frequency, which is also the displayed frequency. Turning the control clockwise raises the passband center frequency, while turning the knob counter-clockwise lowers it.

When QRM is present on both sides of the tuned station, first adjust the SHIFT control just to the point where the interference from one side is eliminated, and then rotate the WIDTH control in the opposite direction to elimi-
 nate interference from the other side. The optimum settings of these controls depend on the relative signal strengths of the desired station and the QRM, and requires practice.

When you have activated the IDBT feature by pressing the [IDBT] button on the Shuttle Jog, the EDSP (Contour) filter's passband offset changes according to the SHIFT knob setting.


## Nотсн Filter

After tuning in a desired signal and adjusting the IF bandwidth and shift, if "heterodyne" interference such as from a carrier or CW signal occurs, activate the IF notch filter by pressing the NOTCH button and slowly adjusting the NOTCH control to null the offending carrier. Note that if the interfering carrier is more than about $\pm 1.2 \mathrm{kHz}$ away from the center of the passband, the notch filter may be unable to null it. In this case, switch the notch filter off, and readjust the IF bandwidth and shift so that the undesired carrier is outside of the passband.


The NOTCH feature actually has three operating modes, involving different combinations of the IF Notch filter and/or the EDSP Notch filter. You may use menu selection 2-9 to utilize only the IF Notch (IF NOTCH selection), the EDSP Notch (Auto DSP selection), or both Notch filters (SELECT). With Select engaged, any residual interference getting past the IF Notch will be eliminated by the EDSP Auto-Notch, and this combination of filters provides impressive results!

## Downloaded by RadioAmateur.EU

## SHIFT/WIDTH Tuning Steps

Rotating the SHIFT or WIDTH control tunes the IF passband using default $10-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps. If desired, you can change to $20-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps, which offers a faster response when turning the control knob. See menu selection 1-2 to set the default steps as desired.

## Dealing with Interference

## Clarifier (Rx/Tx Offset Tuning)

The three CLAR buttons near the lower right corner of the front panel, and the control just above them, are used to offset either the receive, transmit, or both frequencies from their settings on
 the main display. The three small numbers in the center of the display (just to the right of the main frequency display) show the cur-
 rent Clarifier offset. The Clarifier controls on the MARKV FT-1000MP are designed to allow you to preset an offset (up to $\pm 9.99 \mathrm{kHz}$ ) without actually retuning, and then to activate it with the Clarifier's $\mathbf{R X}$ and $\mathbf{T X}$ buttons.

Perform the following steps, if you like, to familiarize yourself with the Clarifier controls:
$\square$ Without pressing any of the Clarifier buttons, rotate the CLAR knob back and forth while watching the small center display. Notice that the small digits change, indicating the preset Clarifier offset (which hasn't been applied to the Tx or Rx frequency yet) while the main display remains unchanged.
$\square$ If you press the Clarifier TX button, "CLAR"-"TX" appears below the smaller offset display, and if you press the PTT you will see the Tx frequency shift by the amount of Clarifier offset.
$\square$ If you press $\mathbf{R X}$ instead, notice that "RX"-"CLAR" appears and the frequency offset is applied and the display shifts to the offset receive frequency accordingly. Press the PTT switch, and notice that the
transmit frequency remains the same as the original frequency display when the receive Clarifier is on. You can reset the offset to 0.00 kHz at any time by simply pressing CLEAR.
$\square$ With the RX Clarifier active, the center tuning marker just above the main frequency display moves to the right or left as you change the offset by rotating the CLAR knob. Also notice that the main frequency and the Clarifier offset displays change together.
$\square$ Now press the Clarifier CLEAR key and observe that the offset is cleared to zero, and the Main VFO frequency returns to what it was originally.

The Clarifier is commonly used when you are in contact with a station whose transmitter drifts (or perhaps you didn't have him quite tuned in when you called him). You don't want to change your transmitting frequency, as that would force him to retune - you just want to adjust your receiver.

Another application for the Clarifier is in a casual DX pile-up situation, where the DX station is listening in a "Split" mode (but listening "UP 5" or a similar split of less than 10 kHz ). In this case, you leave the main receiver on the DX station's frequency, then use the RX Clarifier to tune the pile-up area, listening for the station currently in QSO with the DX station. When you find that station, you can switch the TX Clarifier On and the RX Clarifier Off; you will now be receiving back on the DX station's frequency, but you will be transmitting on the frequency where the DX station probably is still listening. See the discussion on page 56 regarding the use of the SPOT control for CW spotting; it speeds up the above process significantly.

## Advice on QRM Reduction

Use the BANDWIDTH buttons and then the SHIFT and WIDTH controls to suppress interference. Their use varies somewhat from mode to mode.

When you are ready to retune to a new frequency, you may wish to return the SHIFT and WIDTH controls to their default positions (center detent). The WIDTH control can also be turned counter-clockwise to reduce the IF bandwidth more gradually, and then the SHIFT control can be turned left or right from center to shift the center frequency lower or higher, as depicted in the drawing.
For digital modes, the wider bandwidth selections are fine for tuning around, but the 500 or $250(\mathrm{~Hz})$ bandwidths will generally give the best copy with narrow shifts. If you have the RTTY and PKT menu selections set to match your TNC/terminal unit (see page 55), you should not need to adjust the SHIFT
control at all, and the WIDTH control should only be adjusted with a great deal of care (to avoid losing the contact). See the section on digital modes in this manual for more details.

For 300-baud packet, use the $500(\mathrm{~Hz})$ bandwidth and keep the WIDTH control centered; the SHIFT control may require fine tuning either side of center for optimum copy of weak signals. Experiment with the SHIFT setting on a busy packet channel, and then note the optimum setting for all future HF packet operation (it will be the same unless you replace your TNC or recalibrate the input tones).
Note - except during extreme QRM conditions, the WIDTH and SHIFT controls should be left in their center (detent) positions when tuning the receiver to a new frequency. This will provide the best fidelity and easiest tuning.

## Dealing with Interference

When you finish your QSO, remember to press the Clarifier RX button again to turn off the Clarifier. You might also want to clear the offset when done.

The MARK-V FT-1000MP has an independent Clarifier for each VFO, on every band, plus one on each of the 99 memories. This means that Clarifier TX/RX and offset settings are not (improperly) carried over when you change bands or memory channels, but rather are stored in the same condition you last set them until you return to that VFO, band, sub receiver, or memory again.

## Clarifier Settings

There are several settings that affect Clarifier operation and the way the frequency is displayed that you should be familiar with. After understanding their relationships, you can set them as desired.

Tuning Steps -The default $10-\mathrm{Hz}$ tuning steps for the Clarifier can be changed similar to the VFO's using menu function 1-9. Choose between $0.625 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1.25 \mathrm{~Hz}$, $2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 10 \mathrm{~Hz}$ or 20 Hz Clarifier steps.

Clarifier M-Tune - Programmed memories can be re-tuned using the Clarifier when this is enabled (menu function 1-8). We will discuss memory tuning in detail later on.

## Offset Display Mode

The small sub-panel to the right of the MAIN VFOA display can be configured to show one of four different operating parameters.

By default the Tx or Rx Clarifier offset appears. However, this can be changed to the channel frequency, split offset (difference between VFO-A and VFO-B), or else the CW Pitch setting. Which display you choose, of course, depends on your operating habits, but can be easily changed using menu function 3-5. The following is a brief description of each display mode.

Clarifier Offset - this 3-digit display shows the Clarifier Tx or RX offset ( $\pm 9.99 \mathrm{kHz}$ ) to be applied to the operating frequency.


Channel Frequency - this displays the frequency stored in the memory channel displayed to the right. If the memory has not yet been stored with data, the display remains blank (except for a lone decimal point).


Offset - displays the absolute (+/-) frequency difference between MAIN VFO-A and SUB VFO-B. For operators chasing DX stations working split, this makes tuning "down" easier (no mental subtraction from your operating frequency is needed).

## 

CW Pitch - this displays the CW BFO pitch as adjusted by the PITCH control at the lower right corner of the front panel.


## Transmitting

The transmitter can be activated within the $500-\mathrm{kHz}$ segment of any of the HF amateur bands, and from 28 to 30 MHz . When tuned to any other frequency, "GEN" is displayed at the left side of the display, and the transmitter is disabled. However, you are responsible to restrict your transmissions to those frequencies on which you are authorized to operate, per the terms of your amateur license. You should also restrict transmissions to the frequencies for which your antenna is designed.

| Band | TX Range |
| :---: | :---: |
| 160 Meters | $1.50000 \sim 1.99999 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 80 Meters | $3.50000 \sim 3.99999 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 40 Meters | $7.00000 \sim 7.49999 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 30 Meters | $10.00000 \sim 10.49999 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 20 Meters | $14.00000 \sim 14.49999 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 17 Meters | $18.00000 \sim 18.49999 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 15 Meters | $21.00000 \sim 21.49999 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 12 Meters | $24.50000 \sim 24.99999 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 10 Meters | $28.00000 \sim 29.99999 \mathrm{MHz}$ |

Attempting to transmit outside of an amateur band segment will cause the red "TRANSMIT" indicator to the right of the meter to blink. The transmitter is also temporarily inhibited when stopping memory scanning (described later), as pressing the PTT switch while scanning just causes the scanner to stop.

Whenever the transmitter is activated, the MARK-V FT-1000MP automatically detects any reflected power that might appear at the main antenna jack (as a result of an impedance mismatch), and disables the transmitter if too much reflected power is found (in which case the red "HI SWR" indicator at the right side of the display will be lit). Although this protection system should prevent any damage to the transceiver, we still recommend that you never activate the transmitter without having a proper antenna connected to the main ANT jack.

## Selecting Antennas

You can select between two rear-panel antenna connectors for transceive operation via the front panel, perhaps eliminating the need to utilize an external coaxial switch.

Press the A/B button to select the rear-panel jack you wish to use. The antenna connected to this jack is used for
 receive (and always for transmit). If a separate receiveonly antenna is connected to the "RCA" jack labeled $\mathbf{R X} \mathbf{I N}$, and the front panel's $\mathbf{R X}$ switch is pressed, the antenna connected to the RX IN jack will be used by the receiver. A relay engages during transmit, and the last-selected antenna (A or $\mathbf{B}$ ) will be used for transmit. Refer to the diagram at the top of the next column.


Antenna selections are automatically copied along with other operating parameters during memory programming (covered later), and will take effect when memories are recalled later. However, if you do not want this data stored, you can select regular operation, or else disable ANT switch operation. When disabled, antenna selection remains fixed on jack $\mathbf{A}$. Recall menu selection 8-5 to configure the ANT switch function as desired.

## Automatic Antenna Matching

The built-in automatic antenna tuner unit is capable of matching antenna with impedances from 20~150 Ohms, which corresponds to a maximum SWR of approximately 3.0:1. If the antenna you are using exceeds this SWR as configured, it must be adjusted (mechanically or electrically) until a feedpoint impedance closer to 50 Ohms can be obtained.

The MARK-V FT-1000MP provides 39 tuner memories, which store the exact positions of the tuning capacitors and corresponding inductance values, for outstanding operating convenience.

When you use the tuner the first time on an antenna, set the RF PWR control to around the 9 o'clock position, to minimize interference you might cause others, and also to minimize stress on the tuner, feedline, and antenna (in case there is a high SWR). Ensure beforehand that the frequency you will transmit on is clear of other signals. Also, if you want to monitor the tuner's action visually, set the meter IC/SWR selector to display "SWR."

When the channel is clear, press the TUNER button momentarily. The "TUNER" indicator comes on, indicating the ATU is activated, and the "WAIT" indicator next to it appears while the tuner seeks the proper matching settings (and, if monitoring SWR on the meter, you should see the tuner select the lowest possible reading). When the "WAIT" indicator turns off, you are ready to transmit (so long as the "HI SWR" indicator didn't light).

Pressing and holding in the [TUNER] button is the action which causes ATU settings to be stored into memory.

## Transmitting

If the SWR presented to the transceiver is above $3: 1$, the tuner will generally not complete the tuning process (although in certain borderline cases, it may actually be able to lower the SWR below 1.5:1). If the pre-tuning SWR is above 3:1, the auto-tuner will not store the tuning settings, under the presumption that corrective antenna work is required.

After using the antenna tuner, the "TUNER" indicator will remain on (unless you press the [TUNER] button to turn it off), and the "WAIT" indicator will flicker momentarily when you change frequency, indicating that the main microprocessor is reporting the frequency change to the tuner coprocessor (reception is unaffected). If you have tuned far enough to possibly require rematching, it will reset itself to the new range (if it has any previously stored settings for the new range). However, when you first connect a new antenna, the tuner will not have the correct settings stored in these memories, so you will need to "train" the tuner, by pressing and holding the [TUNER] button for $1 / 2$ second whenever you change to a new band or frequency range (for this antenna).

If you want to use an external antenna tuner, the internal ATU should be disabled. menu selection $8-8$ provides a more "fail-safe" method of doing this (as opposed to simply turning the [TUNER] switch off).

Note: The "G5RV" multiband antenna does not present an SWR below 3:1 on all HF amateur bands, despite its reputation as an "all-band" antenna. You will need to perform additional impedance matching with respect to the basic G5RV design, especially on 30, 17 , and 12 meters.

## Important Note

Although the antenna tuning process normally is very fast, certain difficult impedances may require as long as 50 seconds to match. This is a normal condition, however, related to the time required for the variable capacitors to make a complete search for the optimum setting with the available values of inductance.

## SSB Transmission

To transmit in LSB or USB mode:
$\square$ Make sure the appropriate mode indicator is lit, and set the meter ALC/COMP selector to view "ALC."
I If this is the first time you are transmitting SSB with the MARK-V FT-1000MP, preset the MIC and RF PWR controls to about the 12 o'clock position, and make sure the VOX is off (button out).

- Check the "RX" and "TX" LEDs above the tuning knobs to determine which frequency you're going to transmit on, and make sure "GEN" is not showing to the left of the main frequency display.
$\square$ To transmit, just press the PTT (push-to-talk) switch on your microphone, and talk.

To determine the optimum setting of the MIC control for your microphone, adjust it while speaking into the microphone (at a normal level) so that the meter deflects to about midrange on voice peaks (the upper end of the red ALC range). Once found, this setting can be left as-is unless you change microphones. The proper adjustment point for most commonly-available amateur microphones is a setting between about 9 o'clock and 10 o'clock.

You can adjust the RF PWR control for more or less output, from about 5 to 200 watts (on the upper PO meter scale), as desired. However, you should always use the lowest possible power output to maintain reliable communications - not only as a courtesy to other stations, but to minimize the possibility of causing overload to nearby home-entertainment devices, and to reduce heat generation and maximize the life of the equipment.

## Transmitter Monitor

The transmitter monitor is actually a separate receiver circuit which picks up a sample of your transmitted RF signal, allowing you to hear accurately how the signal sounds. This feature is very helpful for setting up the speech processor controls, among other things.

Activate the monitor by pressing the orange [MONI] button (below the AF GAIN control) so that its red LED lights, and adjust the MONI control beneath the meter for a comfortable volume while transmitting. Audio feedback of your signal from the loudspeaker to the microphone may occur if the MONI control is not properly set, you may want to use the monitor with headphones; if so you should MON sUB AF plug them in now.


## Transmitting

## Microphone Tone Selection

Before setting up the speech processor, set the selector switch on the rear of the MH-31 b8D microphone (supplied) for the desired tone characteristic. The " 2 " setting suppresses low frequencies, providing more "pile-up punch" for DX operating. The "1" setting increases the bass response, important for maximum intelligibility when speaking in a language rich in vowel sounds (such as Japanese).

## RF Speech Processor

Once the proper MIC control setting has been determined, you can activate the RF speech processor to increase the average power of your transmitted signal.
$\square$ First set the METER selector to the "ALC" (Automatic Level Control) position, and ensure the level is within the red zone while speaking into the microphone.
$\square$ Next set the METER selector to the PROC "COMP"(speech processor compression) position, and press the [PROC] button (at
 the left end of the row of buttons along the bottom) so that its red LED lights.
$\square$ Now while speaking into the microphone, adjust the PROC control for a compression level of 5 to 10 dB on the COMP scale of the meter (the second scale from the bottom). If you have the monitor activated,
 you will be able to hear the effect of the compression on your signal. In any case, we do not recommend higher compression settings, as your signal will actually become less readable. For the purposes of making accurate adjustments, the long utterance of the word "Four" usually provides a stable, full voice waveform, ideal for setup of the RF speech processor.

- Finally, move the METER selector back to the "PO" position, and (without touching the MIC control setting) adjust the RF PWR control for the desired power output on voice peaks.


## Class-A Operation

A unique feature of the MARK-V FT-1000MP is the capability to operate SSB in Class A. Switching to Class A yields an ultra-linear transmitted signal, with intermodulation distortion products significantly better than possible with a typical Class $\mathrm{AB}_{2}$ transmitter design.

Because Class A involves a total current dissipation much greater than utilized for Class AB, to which you're probably accustomed, maximum power output during Class A is limited to 75 Watts as indicated on the PO meter.

To enable this feature, press the orange [CLASS-A] switch (located below and to the left of the Main Tuning dial) while operating ei-
 ther in USB or LSB. During Class-A operation, the PO meter will indicate up to 75 Watts of power output, while the IC meter will show a nomodulation (constant) current of approximately 10 Amps .

Although the full advantage of Class-A operation will be compromised somewhat when a (non-Class-A) linear amplifier is used, the very clean drive power from the MARK-V FT-1000MP will, nonetheless, provide a significant improvement in overall signal quality.

## Carrier Point Offset

This feature allows shifting the carrier point IF passband (and hence the RF passband as well) of your transmitted signal in the SSB mode, to customize your signal for your own voice characteristics.
Seven individual carrier settings can be user-adjusted:
USB Carrier (Tx \& Rx) - adjustable from -200 ~ +500 Hz.
LSB Carrier (Tx \& Rx) - adjustable from -200 ~ +500 Hz .
Processor Carrier (USB \& LSB) - adjustable from -200 ~ +500 Hz.
AM Carrier - adjustable $\pm 3000 \mathrm{~Hz}$.
To display and adjust the various carrier settings, see menu selection 8-9. With the offset displayed, you can adjust it throughout the ranges shown above A minus sign indicates the offset is closer to the carrier (low-frequency speech emphasized). You can transmit during carrier display and adjustment.
Of course, you can adjust the offset by trial-anderror on the air, but it is better to use the built-in monitor circuit or a monitor receiver, in which you can hear the effect yourself. Otherwise, we recommend starting with $+0.10(+100 \mathrm{~Hz})$ offset initially, to add some "crispness" to your processed speech.


## Transmitting

## VOX Operation

## (Voice-Actuated T/R Switching Operation)

VOX operation allows you to activate the transmitter in any voice mode merely by speaking into the microphone, without having to press the PTT switch.

For the VOX circuit to operate properly, three controls in the top access panel must be set to match your microphone and the acoustic environment of your station. Once set, these controls should not require readjustment unless you change your microphone or station location.
$\square$ First make sure the receiver is set for normal volume on a clear channel, and preset the VOX (gain) control in the top access panel fully counterclockwise. Also preset the A-VOX (Anti-VOX) and DLAY (VOX Delay) controls in the top access panel to their 12 o'clock positions.

- Set the RF PWR control fully CCW (to avoid creating interference while you set up the VOX controls). Now press the [VOX] switch near the upper left corner of the front panel.
$\square$ Without pressing the PTT switch, speak continuously into the microphone while slowly adjusting the VOX control (in the top access panel), looking for the point where your voice just activates the transmitter. Advancing the VOX Gain control beyond this point will make the VOX excessively sensitive to random background noise in your operating room.
$\square$ Now speak intermittently into the microphone, and note the "hang time" between the moment you stop speaking and when the receiver is reactivated. This period should be just long enough so that the transmitter remains keyed between words, but drops back to receive during pauses. Adjust the DLAY control, if necessary, for a comfortable hang time.
The A-vOX control probably needs no adjustment, but if you find that, with the microphone in its normal operating position, receiver audio from the loudspeaker trips the transmitter, advance the A-VOX control more clockwise. On the other hand, if transmitter keying with the VOX keying seems sluggish or unstable when you speak into the microphone, try a more counter-clockwise setting.


## CW Transmission

There are several types of CW transmission available with the MARK-V FT-1000MP. All require that you have a CW key or keyer paddles connected to either of the KEY jacks on the front or rear panel (with a 3contact plug). You simply use the RF PWR control to set your output power.

## Straight-Key Operation

- First preset the RF PWR control to about 12 o'clock. Select the CW mode, if you haven't already, and for now, make sure the [KEYER] and [BK-IN] switches near the lower right corner of the front panel are both off. SPOT BK.IN KEYER SPEED PITCH

$\square$ Press the [VOX] button to turn on the VOX circuit, which provides automatic transmitter activation when you close your key. If you want to practice CW with the sidetone, you can leave the VOX off.
$\square$ To transmit, simply close your key and advance the RF PWR control for the desired power output level.
- You can adjust the CW sidetone volume, if necessary, for a comfortable level using the trimmer accessible via the hole on the rear panel (see item \#3 on page 34).
$\square$ Release the key to return to receive.
You are now using semi break-in CW, in which the transmitter remains activated except during pauses in your sending. You can set the delay during which the transmitter remains on after you stop sending, by adjusting the keyer delay setting (menu selection 7-5).

However, if you prefer full break-in (QSK) operation, in which the receiver is activated between each dot and dash, simply press the [BK-IN] switch (the [VOX] switch should not be depressed).

## Transmitting

## Electronic Keyer Operation

The built-in electronic keyer offers two iambic modes and a mechanical "bug" keyer emulation. You will need to connect keyer paddles to one of the KEY jacks to use the keyer.

The keyer is set at the factory for iambic keying, in which one keyer paddle produces dots, and the other dashes. Squeezing both produces alternating dits and dahs. Menu selection 7-0 allows choosing three keyer modes:
lambic 1 - lambic keyer with ACS (Auto-Character Spacing) disabled. Weighting is user-selectable via menu selections 7-1 \& 7-2.
lambic 2 - lambic keyer with ACS enabled. Weighting is set via menu selections 7-1 \& 7-2.

BUG - Emulates mechanical "bug" keyer (one paddle produces dits and the other is used to produce dahs manually (like a straight key)).

Once the transceiver has been set up for CW transmission as just described, you can activate the keyer with the [KEYER] pushbutton near the lower right corner of the front panel (its red LED should light). Now squeeze the paddles, and adjust the SPEED control for the desired sending speed (if you are using the bug simulator mode, don't squeeze both paddles; just press the "dot" paddle).


If the dot:space and/or dash:space weighting are not to your preference, see menu selections 7-1 and 7-2 to configure your keyer's settings.

You can use the keyer for both semi and full breakin keying, as described in the previous section.

## ACS (Auto Character Spacing)

This feature improves your CW sending quality by ensuring the inter-character spacing of dots and dashes remains constant. Although dot/dash weighting is automatically maintained at the desired ratio, the intercharacter spacing can sometimes vary from operator to operator, and proportional spacing is sometimes not maintained. This does not present much of a problem during slow CW sending, but at higher speeds, the effect is more pronounced and sometimes makes copy difficult.

ACS works on the principle that the spacing between characters should be $3 x$ the duration of the "dot." If you utilize the standard 3:1 dash:dot ratio, this also happens to be the same duration of a "dash." Maintaining this inter-character spacing is what prevents the sent characters "E" and "T," for example, from merging into what sounds like the character " A " (see illustration).

ACS is activated when keyer mode "lambic 2 " is selected from menu function 7-0. For memory keyer programming using the optional FH-1 Keypad, you should always use keyer mode lambic 2 during message programming, although you can switch back to lambic 1 after the messages are loaded, if lambic 1 is more comfortable for you.


## CW Straight Key and Paddle Connections



## Transmitting

Keyer Settings
Keyer Dot \& Dash Weighting - menu selections 71 and 7-2 adjust the Dot:Space and Dash:Space weighting. Default values are "10" (1:1) for Dot:Space, and "30" (3:1) for Dash:Space.

Keyer Delay - For QSK (break-in) CW operation, the switchover time delay from Tx to Rx can be adjusted from 0 seconds (full break-in) to 5.10 seconds (in $10-\mathrm{msec}$ ) using menu selection $7-5$. Note that this provides a separate "hang time" adjustment from the "VOX Delay" setting used during voice operation.

CW Break-In - The switching time of the CW carrier waveform can be adjusted from 0 to 30 milliseconds for use with linear amplifiers with T/R switching circuits not designed for full-QSK operation. This feature provides a programmable delay in the total CW envelope character string, not a simple truncation of the first character. menu selection 7-4 controls the time delay. See also "Linear Amplifier Operation" on page 12 for more details.

## CW Pitch Setting and Spot Tone

In the CW mode (only), pressing the [SPOT] switch on the lower edge of the front panel activates the CW sidetone, which is also used as a spotting oscillator. The frequency of this tone is also (exactly) the frequency at which your transmitted signal will appear relative to SPOT BK-IN KEYER SPEED PITCH that of the incoming signal.

Therefore, if you match the pitch of the SPOT oscillator's tone to the pitch of an incoming signal, you will be exactly "zero beat" with that station's CW signal. In a DX pile-up situation, you can match your
transceiver's SPOT tone with that of the station being worked by the DX station, so as to be "next in line" on the same frequency. This SPOT signal is centered in the receiver section's IF passband, as well, which ensures that you will not lose track of his signal when switching to a narrower filter. Of course, you must turn off the [SPOT] switch once frequency alignment has been completed.

The CW pitch can be set from $300 \sim 1050 \mathrm{~Hz}$ (in $50-\mathrm{Hz}$ increments) to match your personal operating preference. The CW Pitch feature adjusts the amount of offset from "zero beat" of your CW carrier, as well as the corresponding pitch of the CW SPOT tone; it also adjusts the center frequency of the receiver's IF passband, so as to be aligned with the other offset parameters just mentioned. The CW Pitch may also be adjusted to match that used by popular TNC (Terminal Node Controller) units and other CW decoders. While adjusting the pitch, you can have the frequency shown in the Clarifier sub-display by enabling it via menu selection 3-5.

To adjust the CW pitch (and SPOT tone along with it), press the [SPOT] switch, then rotate the PITCH control to set the tone to the pitch you prefer, or that used by your TNC or CW decoder. If the sub display is enabled for indication of the CW pitch, you can view the pitch frequency as you adjust it. The SPOT tone volume can be adjusted using the SIDETONE potentiometer, accessible on the rear panel of the transceiver).

In addition to the spotting oscillator, the directional tuning meter provides a constant visual indication of any signal at the center of the IF passband (if not too weak). You can just tune so that the segment flashes in sync with the signal of interest when it is centered (see page 41).

## Transmitting

## AM Transmission

Transmitter setup for the AM mode is essentially the same as for LSB or USB, except that you must avoid overmodulating, and limit carrier power to 50 watts. This carrier level ensures that sufficient power is available for the voice sideband envelopes.
$\square$ VOX can be used in the AM mode, but for now, make sure the [VOX] switch is off, so as not to confuse adjustments.
$\square$ With the AM mode selected, press the METER [ALC/COMP] button to view the ALC range.
$\square$ Press the PTT switch, and rotate the RF PWR control for the desired power output (remember to limit transmitter carrier power to 50 watts in the AM mode).

- If you have already set the MIC control as described for SSB transmission, there should be no need to readjust it. If not, close the PTT switch, and adjust this control just to the point where the ALC begins to deflect slightly, and stays within the red ALC zone. Don't set it too far beyond this point, or your signal will become distorted from over-modulation.
$\square$ The transmit monitor is very helpful in setting the correct modulation level, and if you have headphones on, you should turn the monitor on now.

Note that the speech processor is disabled in the AM mode. You can, however, activate the VOX, if desired.

## Digital Mode Operation

Information regarding connection of your MARK-V FT-1000MP to commonly-available digital-mode modem devices is presented beginning on page 15.

Operating practices generally are governed by details provided in the operating manual for the TNC or modem you are using. However, a few guidelines are presented below, to help you get on the air quickly.

## RTTY Operation

To operate, just press the RTTY mode button once or twice to select the desired sideband for operation. LSB is default, and is used by normal convention (USB can be selected for MARS or other applications). Should you need reverse tone polarity or non-standard shift (other than 170 Hz ), configure menu selection 6-1 and 6 -2 as desired.

| RTTY Tone/Shift Information |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Shift | High Tone Pair* | Low Tone Pair |  |  |
|  | Mark | Space | Mark | Space |
| $170 \mathrm{~Hz}^{*}$ | 2125 Hz | 2295 Hz | 1275 Hz | 1445 Hz |
| 425 Hz | 2125 Hz | 2550 Hz | 1275 Hz | 1700 Hz |
| 850 Hz | 2125 Hz | 2975 Hz | 1275 Hz | 2125 Hz |
| ※ indicates default setting (used by normal convention) |  |  |  |  |

For optimum signal-to-noise ratio, use the $250-\mathrm{Hz}$ or $500-\mathrm{Hz}$ BANDWIDTH selection for $170-\mathrm{Hz}$ shift, the $500-\mathrm{Hz}$ selection for $425-\mathrm{Hz}$ shift, or the $2.0-\mathrm{kHz}$ selection for $850-\mathrm{Hz}$ shift. Remember that the Sub VFO receiver bandwidth is only selectable between 6.0 kHz , 2.4 kHz and 500 Hz (optional YF-100 required) for RTTY (and PKT).

Note that for AMTOR operation, you must have the VOX button off, and may need to set the AGC control to "FAST" or "OFF" (and reduce the setting of the RF Gain control) for Mode A (ARQ).

## 300-Baud Packet

Construct a patch cable as required, and connect your TNC to the rear-panel PACKET jack. Do not connect the squelch line (pin 5) for 300-baud packet operation.

Tuning is very critical for F1 packet: you should tune the transmitter and receiver within 10 Hz of a signal to minimize repeats. The MARK-V FT-1000MP includes a few custom features to make packet operation more convenient.

Packet Tone Pair - This offsets the center of the IF bandpass according to the packet tone pair you are using. If set correctly, the receiver passband will remain centered on a properly-tuned packet station when switching between wide and narrow IF filters, minimiz-

## Transmitting

ing the need for re-tuning or use of the SHIFT control for re-centering.

One of four standard tone pairs can be chosen for operation from menu selection 6-5, as desired. The menu display shows the center frequency of the selected tone pair (see the table below for actual mark/space tone combinations). Set the Packet Tone Pair to match the tones generated by your TNC (these are usually set via terminal software or DIP switches - check in your TNC documentation).

Important Note! - if changing packet tone pair to other than $2025 / 2225 \mathrm{~Hz}$, be sure to re-calibrate the tuning meter as outlined on page 85 . The calibration routine is simple, and ensures your center tuning indication matches the tone pair.

Packet Frequency Display Offset - You can display the center frequency of the two transmitted carriers, (that is, the packet tone pair used), without any offset, instead of the actual carrier frequency. Recall menu selection 6-4 and turn the main knob to select the offset ( $\pm 3.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ ).

Note - The default display offset is -2.125 kHz (to match the default tone pair* in 6-5 above, and assuming LSB operation). Ideally, the display offset should match the default tone pair, which in turn should match those used by your TNC. If you would rather have the actual carrier frequency (without offset) displayed, set the display offset to 0.000 kHz .

## Packet Operation

Select the NAR 2 (500-Hz or $250-\mathrm{Hz}$ ) filter for 300baud packet, and press the [PKT] mode button on the front panel once or twice, so that the green LSB LED indicator lights along with the red PKT LED.

Transmitter adjustment is similar to SSB:
ㅁ Preset the RF PWR control counterclockwise, and set the METER selector to "ALC."
$\square$ Now set your TNC to its "calibrate" mode, preferably with both tones alternating, and adjust the MIC control so that the meter deflects to mid-scale. Your TNC's "TX Audio" output may also be capable of adjustment via a potentiometer inside the TNC.

- Switch the METER selector to "PO" and advance the RF PWR control for the desired power output.

| Packet Tone Information |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| TNC Tone Pair | Tone Center Frequency |
| $1070 / 1270 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 1170 Hz |
| $1600 / 1800 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 1700 Hz |
| $2025 / 2225 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 2125 Hz |
| $2110 / 2310 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 2210 Hz |
| ※ indicates default setting (used by normal convention) |  |

When tuning, be aware that some common HF packet channels, such as " 14.103 " MHz, were originally determined to correspond with an actual IF center frequency 1700 Hz lower (in accordance with an old TAPR convention). Therefore, if you have the Packet Frequency Display Offset (menu selection 6-4) set to match your TNC's actual tones, the display shows 14.101.30 when tuned to the above frequency - which is the actual center of your receiver passband, and the frequency mid-way between the two FSK carriers you will transmit.

Initially, you may need to adjust the receiver IF shift slightly right or left to get the 500-Hz IF filters perfectly centered over incoming signals. Start with the SHIFT control centered, and try to establish a connection with a moderately strong signal on a clear channel. If the connection is poor (many repeats), move the SHIFT control slightly right, and see if the repeats decline. Continue in this manner until you find the best SHIFT setting (with minimal repeats), and use this same setting for all future HF packet operation.

## 1200-Baud FM Packet

The equipment setup for 1200-baud FM packet (above 29 MHz ) is the same as for 300 -baud packet, except that you may want to connect the squelch line of the TNC to pin 5 of the PACKET jack if you plan to use the squelch. Press the [PKT] mode switch until both it and the green LED on the FM mode button are lit. Tuning is much less critical in this mode, requiring no special adjustments. Also, the FM MIC GAIN control in the top access panel has been preset at the factory for proper deviation with typical signal levels, so you should not need to readjust it (you should adjust the Tx audio output level of your TNC, though, if your signal sounds distorted in the monitor).

To set up the transmitter for FM packet:
$\square$ Start with the RF PWR control counterclockwise.

- Switch the METER selector to "PO" and set the RF PWR control for the desired power output.


## Downloaded by RadioAmateur.EU

## TRANSMITTING

## FM Transmission

A separate, dedicated " 29 MHz " band is provided on the MARK-V FT-1000MP, allowing you to operate both on 28 MHz in narrow-band modes, and above 29 MHz using narrow-band FM. This relieves you of the need to change all your configurations when switching voice modes.

For transmission, the only control on the front panel you need be concerned about is RF PWR. Microphone gain for FM is set via the separate FM MIC control in the top access panel, and normally needs no adjustment after leaving the factory. If you receive signals reports of low audio with a strong carrier, you may want to increase the gain. If you notice distortion in the transmit monitor, you may want to decrease it. Otherwise, we suggest leaving it alone. Remember that the apparent modulation level on 29 MHz will be less than you are accustomed to on VHF, due to international regulations restricting the maximum deviation to $\pm 2.5$ kHz .

All you need to do for most operation is set the METER selector to the "PO" position, and adjust the RF PWR control for the desired output while transmitting. If you need full power, keep your transmissions to three minutes or less, with the same time for reception. Otherwise, set the power output to 100 Watts or less, and you should never encounter any duty cycle limitations.

You can use the VOX circuit for $t / r$ switching, if desired, and the transmit monitor to listen to your signal. See also the FM Repeater Operation at the right.

## FM Repeater Operation

Several features are available for operation on FM repeaters above 29 MHz , which typically use $100-\mathrm{kHz}$ splits.

To locate these repeaters, you can ask around the calling channel ( 29.6 MHz ), or you may want to load a block of memory channels (see page 67) with $50-\mathrm{kHz}$ frequency multiples from 29.61 to 29.7 MHz (and FM mode, of course). Then set the squelch so that the receiver is silent on a clear channel, and hold the microphone UP/DWN keys to scan the memories.

Repeater Shift - When you find a repeater, press the [RPT] button, once for "-" shift (to transmit 100 kHz below your receiving frequency). Pressing it again will select " + " shift, but this is not used above 29.6 MHz . Press it once more to return to simplex. Try a quick identification transmission to make sure you have the
 shift right.

Repeater TX Offset - For repeaters not using the standard 100 kHz offfset, you can change the default offset between $0 \sim 200 \mathrm{kHz}$ via menu selection 6 - 9 .

CTCSS Tone - A low-level $88.5-\mathrm{Hz}$ subaudible tone is transmitted to access closed repeaters. Should a different CTCSS tone be required, you can choose any one of 33 standard tones via menu selection 6-7.

Tone Type - Continuous (CTCSS) or burst tone transmission is enabled from menu selection 6-8.

| CTCSS Tone Frequencies |  |  |
| ---: | ---: | ---: |
| 67.0 Hz | 118.8 Hz | 173.8 Hz |
| 71.9 Hz | 123.0 Hz | 179.9 Hz |
| 77.0 Hz | 127.3 Hz | 186.2 Hz |
| 82.5 Hz | 131.8 Hz | 192.8 Hz |
| 88.5 Hz | 136.5 Hz | 203.5 Hz |
| 94.8 Hz | 141.3 Hz | 210.7 Hz |
| 100.0 Hz | 146.2 Hz | 218.1 Hz |
| 103.5 Hz | 151.4 Hz | 225.7 Hz |
| 107.2 Hz | 156.7 Hz | 233.6 Hz |
| 110.9 Hz | 162.2 Hz | 241.8 Hz |
| 114.8 Hz | 167.9 Hz | 250.3 Hz |

## Using SUB VFO B

The Sub VFO works in a similar manner to the Main VFO, with which you should be familiar by now. The Sub VFO provides simple split (transmit/receive) frequency operation via the combination of the MAIN VFO's RX and TX LED/Buttons and the SUB VFO's RX and TX LED Buttons, and, more importantly, dualchannel reception via the [DUAL] button. We'll get into those in a minute, but first let's look at how to control the Sub VFO.

Frequency, mode, and Clarifier data can be transferred from the Main VFO to the Sub VFO by pressing [A>B], but don't forget that this will overwrite any settings that were in the Sub VFO previously. Also, the contents of the two VFOs can be swapped (with no loss of data) by pressing $[\mathbf{A} \perp \mathbf{B}]$.

Most selections for the Main VFO can also be made for the Sub VFO directly, by pressing [SUB(CE)] right before another keypad key to select a band, or before a mode button to change the Sub VFO mode (displayed below the Sub VFO frequency). When you press the [SUB(CE)] key, the entire display for the Sub VFO will blink, after which you have five seconds to press another key. Note that to switch VFO registers in the Sub VFO, you need merely press the [SUB(CE)] key followed by the key for the same band that the Sub VFO is already on.
$\square$ To set the Sub VFO (if it currently is on 7.000.0 MHz LSB) to the 14 MHz band, press $[$ SUB $(C E)] \Rightarrow[14(5)]$.
$\square$ To change to USB, press [SUB(CE)] $\Rightarrow$ [USB].
$\square$ To set the Sub VFO's frequency to 14.225 .00 MHz USB in one step,
press $[$ SUB $(C E)] \Rightarrow[E N T] \Rightarrow[1.8(1)] \Rightarrow[10(4)]$ $\Rightarrow[3.5(2)] \Rightarrow[3.5(2)] \Rightarrow[14(5)] \Rightarrow[$ USB $] \Rightarrow[$ ENT $]$.
Unlike the Main VFO, with its triple-conversion receiver, the Sub VFO receiver uses double-conversion circuitry with 47 MHz and 455 kHz intermediate frequencies. Filters are selected automatically in the sub receiver, according to the operating mode. A $6-\mathrm{kHz}$ AM filter and $2.4-\mathrm{kHz}$ SSB/CW filter come installed from the factory. For CW work, a third optional $500-\mathrm{Hz}$ narrow filter is also available from your dealer. After installation, this filter pathway must be enabled via menu selection 5-8. During operation, you can select this filter by pressing $[$ SUB (CE)] $\Rightarrow$ [NAR1] or [SUB(CE)] $\Rightarrow$ [NAR2].

Of course, you can tune the Sub VFO using its tuning knob, and use faster tuning steps by holding the [FAST] button (below the left side of the main tuning knob). You can use the large $\operatorname{DOWN}(\boldsymbol{\nabla})$ and $\mathbf{U P}(\mathbf{A})$ keys (in both normal and $1-\mathrm{MHz}$ fast steps) for the Sub VFO as well, if you just press the [SUB(CE)] key first.

About the only things you cannot do with the Sub VFO (that you can with the Main VFO), are store it directly into a memory, and set the Clarifier. For these functions you need to swap it with the Main VFO first (push $[\mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{-} \mathbf{B}]$, then hold the $[\mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{B}]$ button for $1 / 2$-second (to store it in a memory) or set the Clarifier, and then press $[\mathbf{A} \& \mathbf{B}]$ again to return the data to the respective VFOs.

## Dual Reception

Pressing the blue [DUAL] button activates the SUB VFO-B receiver. The "DUAL" indicator will appear at the left of the display, and the green "RX" LED above the SUB VFO-B tuning knob lights. Instead of pressing the blue [DUAL] button, you also can simply press the green "RX" LED, as this actually is a combined switch/LED.

Dual receive operation opens up exciting operating possibilities for split operation, contesting, and chasing elusive DX stations. For split-frequency DX pileups the ability to listen to both "sides" of the pile-up allows very precise timing of your calls. For contesting, dual receive allows you to continue a "run" on your "main" frequency while keeping an ear on a DX "multiplier" that might not be listening for your call area, for example.

The Main and Sub VFO share the same antenna and front-end bandpass filter, and so should be tuned fairly close to each other for maximum sensitivity (that is, within 500 kHz or so at low frequencies, or within several MHz at higher frequencies). Although you may be able to receive on, say, 21 and 28 MHz at the same time, you may find the SUB VFO-B receiver signal attenuated.

There are 12 BPF networks in the receiver frontend circuitry, each covering a particular segment of the transceiver's full receive range. SUB VFO-B receiver specifications are only guaranteed while tuning within the same bandpass as the MAIN VFO-A.

## Main and Sub VFO Audio

The AF GAIN knob controls the Main VFO's volume level, and the smaller SUB AF knob controls the Sub VFO's volume. The effect these controls have on receiver audio can be changed, and is configured using menu selection 4-9. AF GAIN control knob operation can be set to either of the two following modes:

Separate - The receiver volume for the Main and Sub VFOs is adjusted independently. This simply means that the AF GAIN knob controls the MAIN VFOA volume and the small SUB AF knob controls the Sub VFO's volume.

## Using SUB VFO B

Balance - The AF GAIN knob adjusts the volume for both the Main and Sub VFOs simultaneously. The small SUB AF now functions as a "balance" control between Main and Sub audio levels.

Note - To "reverse" Main and Sub receiver audio at any time, press the [AF REV] button just to the left of the $\operatorname{DOWN}(\boldsymbol{\nabla}) / \mathbf{U P}(\mathbf{A})$ keys so its LED lights. The functions of the AF GAIN and small SUB AF controls are now switched. Press the button again to return to normal operation.

Remember that when the Sub VFO is turned off by pressing [DUAL] again, the AF GAIN control configurations no longer apply.

## Using Headphones for Dual Receive

To take advantage of dual reception, you will want to connect stereo headphones to the PHONES jack. Like the AF GAIN control, headphone audio mixing can also be configured as desired from menu selection 4-8. Three audio mixing schemes are selectable as follows:

Mono - Audio from both the Main and Sub receiver is combined equally in both ears (as from the loudspeaker when headphones are not used).

Stereo 1 - This is a combination of the audio from the two receivers and it gives you some audio from each channel in each ear, but with the Main receiver emphasized in the left ear, and the Sub receiver emphasized in the right ear, resulting in a kind of "3-D" spatial audio effect.

Stereo 2 - Audio from the Main receiver is only heard in the left ear, and audio from the Sub receiver is heard only in the right ear.

Note that both the Main and Sub VFOs must be activated (to put the MARK-V FT-1000MP into the dual receive mode), and the AF GAIN control(s) must be balanced (centered) to hear both receivers. Compare these two positions with both VFOs tuned to signals, to select the audio mixing scheme you prefer.

Also observe that the VRF, EDSP, RF GAIN, SHIFT, WIDTH, NOTCH, and AGC functions do not affect the sub receiver (AGC is automatically selected according to mode, or else from menu selection 8-7).

## Headphone Audio Adjustments

The Main and Sub receiver audio levels available from headphone jacks A and B are manually adjustable. Underneath the top panel access cover are four trimpots allowing individual adjustment of Main and Sub audio for each headphone jack. With a headphone inserted into the appropriate jack, you can rotate these controls using a small insulated screwdriver for optimum level and balance. Refer to the drawing below for trimpot locations.


## Using SUB VFO B

## Split Frequency Operation

Typical split operation involves receiving on the Main VFO-A or a memory channel, and transmitting on the Sub VFO-B. The special case of FM repeater operation uses some features of its own, and is described on page 59 .

Rare DX stations often announce that they will "listen up" or "listen down" a few kHz (from their Tx frequency) when calling CQ or during contests to avoid being covered by the DX pileup from responding stations.

To activate Split operation, press the (TX) Button/ LED above the Sub VFO's tuning knob. "SPLIT" will appear at the left of the display, and the red TX LED above the Sub VFO tuning knob will light up. Split operation can be activated with or without dual reception; however, we recommend that you have dual receive on, to allow you to monitor your transmit frequency on the Sub VFO (while receiving), as well as the Main VFO receiving frequency, so you don't accidentally "step on" somebody.

A few button functions you will need to know for split operation are explained below.

SUB VFO-B (TX) Button/LED - Pressing this button activates the Sub VFO for transmission.
[A $\triangle$ B] - Pressing this key copies the displayed contents of the Main VFO into the Sub VFO, overwriting its previous contents.
[A®B] - Pressing this key switches "trades" the displayed contents of the Main and Sub VFOs.

## Split Operation Mode

The MARK-V FT-1000MP offers three modes of Split operation (chosen by menu selection 8-2):

Normal - In this default configuration, pressing SUB VFO-B (TX) Button/LED activates Sub VFO-B for transmission. Other settings (such as mode and frequency) must be manually set for the Sub VFO.

Auto - When SUB VFO-B (TX) Button/LED is pressed, Sub VFO-B is enabled for transmit, and the selected operating mode from Main VFO-A is automatically copied into Sub VFO-B. The transmission frequency must still be manually set for the Sub VFO.
$\boldsymbol{A}=\boldsymbol{B}$ - Same as Auto mode above, however, a preset frequency offset (known as a "Quick Split") is also applied to Sub VFO-B for transmission.

The "Quick Split" feature is handy when you know the offset a $D X$ station will be listening on beforehand. The offset is applied instantly, saving time and mental arithmetic. It also ensures that you will not be transmitting on the DX station's TX frequency! A Quick Split offset up to $\pm 100 \mathrm{kHz}$ can be selected in menu selection 1-6.

## SUB VFO-B Settings

S-Meter - You can enable or disable the S-meter for the sub receiver via menu selection 3-6.
Peak-Hold - Additionally, if you want the "peak-hold" meter function (see page 41) for the Sub Receiver S-meter, it can be turned on/off by menu selection 3-8.

Tuning Steps - The Sub VFO's step size (0.625 ~ 20 Hz ) is selected in menu selection 1-4.

Sub Receiver AGC - The AGC recovery time constant can be switched from automatic (default) to either fast or slow using menu selection 8-7.
Filters - When installed, the optional $500-\mathrm{Hz}$ IF filter can be selected from the front-panel via menu selection 5-8.
Lastly, if you want to disable SUB VFO-B operation entirely, it can be turned off from menu selection 7-8 (the display still appears and the SUB VFOB knob can be turned, but nothing is received). While disabled, the sub receiver can be activated as a separate transmit VFO for split operation by pressing the SUB VFO-B (TX) Button/LED.

## Using SUB VFO B

## Sideband Diversity Reception

Here you receive a single AM signal through the two receivers, each receiving the opposite sideband. Skywave-propagated signals often show phase distortion in this mode, but it gives you a view of the entire passband, from which you can then select the best sideband for listening (or for SWL Dx'ing, you may want to listen to both sidebands at the same time, to get the best copy). On groundwave signals, where the phase of the sidebands is likely to be the same, there is an interesting sense of depth to the signal.

To tune in a signal using this mode, you should have stereo headphones connected to the front panel PHONES jack, or an external stereo amplifier connected to the rear panel AF OUT jack.
$\square$ Set the Main VFO to either LSB or USB mode, and tune for zero beat on the desired signal.
$\square$ Press $[A \vee B]$ to copy this mode and frequency into the Sub VFO, then press the mode button to select the opposite sideband for the Main VFO.
$\square$ If using headphones, set the headphone mixing scheme to the Stereo 1 mode, and press [DUAL] to activate dual reception. Adjust the AF GAIN control(s) to balance the volume of the two receivers.

If interference is present on one of the channels, you may have to turn its AF GAIN control to suppress that channel (or press the green "RX" switch/LED to disable the receiver with the sideband experiencing interference). Otherwise, try changing the headphone audio mixing scheme to Stereo 2 or Mono in the menu selection for different effects (or try settings with similar effects on your external amplifier). Although you don't get the "stereophonic" effect in the monaural mode, the two signals are still mixed, offering the potential for much better copy than in regular AM or even singlesideband ECSS modes.

## Bandwidth Diversity Reception

This mode involves receiving the same signal through two different bandpass filters. The frequency and mode of each VFO is the same. The main receiver provides a narrow bandpass, and the sub receiver a wide bandpass, resulting in a spatial perception of the channel. Although any mode (except FM) can be used, CW offers the widest array of choices, and perhaps the most startling effects on crowded channels.

Stereo headphones or an external stereo amplifier are recommended for this mode. To set up the transceiver for bandwidth diversity reception:
$\square$ Select the desired mode on the Main VFO, and the press the [NOR] or [NAR1] button (its LED will light up).
$\square$ Tune to the signal of interest.
$\square$ Press $[\mathbf{A}-\mathrm{B}]$ to copy this mode and frequency into the Sub VFO, then press the [NAR 2] button to select a narrow filter for the Main VFO.
$\square$ If using headphones, set the headphone mixing scheme to the Stereo 1 mode and press [DUAL] to activate dual reception. Next adjust the AF GAIN control(s) to balance the volume of the two receivers. If using an external amplifier, adjust its balance control.

You also may find it interesting to try the SHIFT and WIDTH controls (on the Main receiver) for some interesting effects.

Before retuning, remember to press [DUAL] to turn off dual reception.

## VFO Tracking

To have Sub VFO B track the Main Receiver VFO while tuning (with dual reception on or off), simply hold the [LOCK] button depressed.

With [LOCK] depressed, the "TRACK" indicator appears when the main tuning knob is rotated, and the Sub VFO tracks the Main receiver. Release the button to resume normal tuning.

## Memory Features

## Memory Structure

The MARK-V FT-1000MP contains ninety-nine regular memories, labeled 1-1 through 1-99, nine special programmed limit memories, labeled P1 through P9, and five QMB (Quick Memory Bank) memories, labeled C1~C5. Each stores the Main VFO's frequency and mode, IF filter selections, Clarifier on/off and offset settings, as well as Repeater Shift status (if appropriate). By default, the 99 regular memories are contained in one group; however, they can be arranged in up to 5 separate groups if desired.


Like during VFO operation, you can freely tune and change the mode or Clarifier settings and you can also copy settings from one memory to another. In fact, you can do nearly anything with a memory that you can with the VFOs, except for the special PMS memories (P1~P0), described later.

The [VFO/MEM], $[\mathbf{A} \triangleright \mathbf{M}],[\mathbf{M} \perp \mathbf{A}]$ and $[\mathbf{M C K}]$ buttons and VRF/MEM CH knob are used to control various memory operations, as follows:

- [VFO/MEM] - This toggles control between memory or VFO operation. If a displayed memory has been re-tuned, pressing [VFO/MEM] once returns to the originally-memorized frequency, and pressing it again returns to the last-used VFO.
- [A- M] - When receiving on a VFO or re-tuned memory, pressing and holding in this key for $1 / 2$ second stores the current operating data into the currently selected memory. Two beeps sound, and any previous data in that memory register will be overwritten. Momentarily pressing this key activates memory checking ("MCK" blinks) for 3 seconds. This is described in the next section on memory storage and recall.
- [M>A] - Pressing and holding in this key for $1 / 2$ second copies the frequency and operating data stored in a selected memory into the Main VFO. Momentarily pressing this key activates memory checking ("MCK" blinks) for 3 seconds. This is described in the next section on memory storage and recall.
- [M CK] - Pressing this key also activates memory checking (to look at the current contents of a memory or memories) and displays the contents of the memory channels in the right Sub VFO display.
- VRF/MEM CH - This knob selects the memory channel while memory operation. However, when the VRF feature is engaged, this knob tune the passband of the narrow input "preselector" filter. In this instance, press this knob momentarily to change this knob's operation to that of memory channel selection.


## Memory Programming

Memory programming allows storing your favorite or often-used frequencies into memory channels for long-term storage and quick recall. The MARK-V FT1000MP memories are retained after power-off by a long-life lithium backup battery that should not need to replaced for more than 5 years. Should you expect to not use your transceiver for extended periods, you can switch off the backup battery via the rear panel switch to conserve lithium backup battery life (see page 114).

## Auto Channel-Up

Normally, you must manually increment the channel number when programming consecutive memories. If you would like to save time and have the channel number automatically increment after writing each memory, this can be enabled in menu selection 0-8.

## Copying VFO-A Data to Selected Memory

You can store the frequency and all operational settings for the displayed (Main) VFO into a memory channel by following this simple procedure:

- Set up all operating parameters and frequency as desired on the Main VFO.
- When the VRF feature is engaged, press the VRF/ MEM CH knob momentarily to change the VRF/ MEM CH knob's operation to that of memory channel selection.
- Rotate the VRF/MEM CH knob to select the memory channel to fill ("MCK" will start blinking).
- When you have chosen a channel into which to store the frequency data, press and hold in $[\mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{M}$ ] for $1 / 2$ second so that two beeps sound. The VFO contents are now stored in the selected memory channel; at this point, you remain in the VFO mode, so you can continue tuning around and/or storing additional memories.


## Notice <br> Regarding the VRF/MEM CH Knob

When the VRF feature is engaged, the VRF/MEM CH knob tunes the passband of the narrow input "Preselector" filter. During Memory operation, to enable memory channel selection, press the VRF/ MEM CH knob momentarily; rotation of the knob will now allow you to select other memories. And if you want to enter the "Memory Tune" mode and step around in channelized steps (per the setting of menu selection 1-5), press and hold in the VRF/ MEM CH knob for $1 / 2$ second.

## Basic Memory Storage Procedure



## Recalling \& Operating on Memory Channels

To recall a memory stored per the previous section, you first must switch to the "Memory" mode. To do this, while operating on the Main VFO, press [VFO/ MEM]. The last-utilized memory's contents will appear in the main frequency display field. To return to VFO operation, just press [VFO/MEM] once more; the VFO's contents will have remained undisturbed.

While operating in the memory mode (if you haven't yet re-tuned it - see below), the "MEM" indicator is displayed instead of "VFO," and you can now rotate the VRF/MEM CH knob or press the microphone UP/DWN buttons to select any previously-stored memories for operation.

Pressing and holding in the [M-A] key for $1 / 2$ second copies the current memory channel data into VFOA. You can now tune around on the Main VFO, having used the memory channel's frequency as a starting point. When you press and hold in [M-A], you lose the previous contents of the Main VFO, and if you were receiving on the VFO, operation shifts to the frequency and mode just copied from the memory.

Pressing the $[\mathrm{M} \boldsymbol{- A}$ ] key momentarily shows you the contents of the memory, without overwriting VFOA data. This is a momentary version of the [M CK] key's action.

## Memory Tuning

With this mode, you can emulate VFO tuning and operation on a memory channel and retain the memory checking feature: if you change frequency, mode or Clarifier settings, "MEM" is replaced with "MTUNE". During memory tuning, the microphone UP/DWN buttons now duplicate tuning knob functions like VFO operation (rather than select memory channels as before). Pressing [VFO(MEM)] once cancels any re-tuning changes to the memory and reverts to the memory recall mode ("MEM" displayed again). Pressing [VFO/MEM] once more returns the transceiver to VFO operation.

Memory Tuning makes operation on memories 1 to 99 just as flexible as the VFOs (memories P1 ~ P9 have special additional features, described later). If you want to save changes to a re-tuned memory channel, use the same procedure you use to store the VFOs to memory: Press [VFO/MEM] momentarily, and rotate the VRF/MEM CH knob to select another memory (if desired), or just hold $[\mathbf{A}-\mathbf{M}$ ] for $1 ⁄ 2$-second until the double beep sounds (to overwrite the current memory with the re-tuned data).

The labeling and function of $[\mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{M}$ ] during memory tuning is somewhat deceptive as the VFO settings, which are hidden at this point, are not involved in this operation at all, since those of the recalled memory have taken their place.

Important Note: Computer software programs utilizing the CNT' system interface port may presume that the transceiver is operating in the VFO mode for certain features like "band mapping" and/or frequency logging. Because the "Memory Tune" mode so closely resembles the VFO mode, be sure that you have the MARK-V FT-1000MP operating in a control mode compatible with your software's requirements.

## Memory Сhecking

Before storing or recalling a memory, you will usually want to check its contents. One memory channel number is displayed at all times (just to the left of the CH indicator at the right center of the display). You can change the selected channel number by rotating the VRF/MEM CH knob.

If you rotate this knob while receiving on the VFO or a re-tuned memory, "MCK" blinks beneath the channel number, and the mode and frequency previously stored in the selected channel will be displayed in place of the SUB VFO-B display. for three seconds after you stop turning the knob. If the memory is vacant, "CLEAR" appears above the channel number and nothing is displayed except two decimal points.

You can also view memories by pressing [M CK], in which case memory data is continuously displayed ("MCK" remains on and doesn't blink). You must press [M CK] again to return the display to the VFO.

Momentarily pressing either $[\mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{-}$ ] or $[\mathbf{M}>\mathbf{A}]$ also activates memory checking. As mentioned before, "MCK" blinks as the frequency and mode indicators change to show the contents of the last-selected memory. If you touch nothing else, the display reverts to your current operating parameters automatically after 3 seconds. By turning the front panel VRF/MEM CH knob before the 3 seconds expires, you can select for display each of the general purpose and PMS memories. Pressing these buttons restarts the 3-second timer, so as long as you are changing channels, memory checking mode persists.

Note: When checking memories, both vacant and filled memories are displayed. If you would like to skip over vacant memories, press the [FAST] button before memory checking.


## Recalling \& Operating on Memory Channels

## Copying a Selected Memory to VFO-A

If desired, you can store the frequency and all operational settings for the selected memory channel into the Main VFO. While operating in the Memory mode:

- When the VRF feature is engaged, press the VRF/ MEM CH knob momentarily to change the VRF/ MEM CH knob's operation to that of memory channel selection.
- Rotate the VRF/MEM CH knob ("MCK" blinks) to select the memory channel to copy.
ㅁ Press and hold in the [ $\mathbf{M} \boldsymbol{A}$ ] key for $1 / 2$ second so that two beeps sound. The memory channel data is now copied to the Main VFO, and you are left operating on the VFO.


## Copying Between Memories

The same procedure for copying VFO-A into memories is also used to copy one memory to another. Like VFO-A, one memory can be selectively copied; however, there are a few differences.

To copy from one memory to another (including PMS memories), first activate memory tuning by simply turning the VFO dial so that "M-TUNE" appears (and then tuning back to the desired frequency). Rotate the VRF/ MEM CH knob to select a memory to fill, then (within 3 seconds) press $[\mathbf{A} \perp \mathbf{M}]$ to copy the contents from the re-tuned (source) memory to the destination memory.


Example 1 (all memories divided among five groups)


## Grouping Memories

The 99 regular memories and PMS memories P1~P9 can be grouped among up to five memory banks, if desired. Memory grouping is configured by menu selections 0-1 through 0-5.

By default, Group 1 is filled with all memories; Groups $2 \sim 5$ are disabled (empty). Group 2 is enabled by not filling group 1 to capacity, and carrying over the extra memories, and so on. You could fill Group 1 with memories 1~20, for example, and carry over memories 21~99 and P1~P9 to Group 2, or else you can apportion them among Groups 2~5, as desired. Remember that to carry over memories from one group to the next, the preceding group must not be filled to capacity (i.e., the group holding memory channel P9 is the last enabled group).

## Limiting Memory Group Operation

If you have assigned filled memories into more than one group (as explained on the previous page), you can enable a particular group and limit memory recall and scanning operation (covered later) only to those memories in that selected group, if so desired.

To do this, simply rotate the VRF/MEM CH knob so that any memory channel number in the desired group is displayed, then press the [M GRP] button just above and to the left (see box below). The "GROUP" indicator appears and you will find that only memories within that group are now available for recall and operation.

## Notice Regarding the VRF/MEM CH Knob

When the VRF feature is engaged, the VRF/MEM CH knob tunes the passband of the narrow input "Preselector" filter. During Memory operation, to enable memory channel selection, press the VRF/ MEM CH knob momentarily; rotation of the knob will now allow you to select other memories. And if you want to enter the "Memory Tune" mode and step around in channelized steps (per the setting of menu selection 1-5), press and hold in the VRF/ MEM CH knob for $1 / 2$ second.

## Recalling \& Operating on Memory Channels

QMB (Quick Memory Bank) Operation
The Quick Memory Bank is comprised of five memories (labeled C1 ~ C5) independent from the regular and PMS memories. These can quickly store operating parameters for later recall. You might find this handy to use when you have tuned a station of interest that you want to save, but don't want to overwrite your regular or PMS memories, especially if you have them organized a specific way.

You can use the QMB memories the same way you would a notepad in your shack - for jotting down (saving) frequencies and modes to come back to later. There are five QMB memories enabled by default; however you can disable some if desired, using menu selection 0-6.

- To store a frequency into the first Quick Memory (C-1), simply press [STO].
- Stored Quick Memories are recalled by pressing [RCL] repeatedly to select the desired memory ("QMB" will be displayed at the left, and the Quick Memory channel number will be displayed in the memory box, as shown below).


Additional settings will be entered directly into $\mathrm{C}-1$, with previously-stored entries then being shifted to the next available Quick Memory. This "stacking" system keeps the most recent entry in the first memory, and automatically shifts older entries into the next consecutive memory. After all Quick memories have been filled, additional entries overwrite previous ones on a "firstin, first-out" basis (as shown inside the box below).

- To revert from QMB operation back to VFO-A, simply press [VFO(MEM)] once.



## Downloaded by <br> RadioAmateur.EU

## VFO ScanNing

You can start scanning on the Main VFO by holding the microphone UP or DWN button for $1 / 2$ second (the receiver squelch does not have to be closed in this case). To increase the scan speed ( x 10 ) press either the microphone FST button (momentary-type) or the front panel [FAST] button. Scanning continues up or down until a button is pushed, or else "loops-around" when the upper or lower receiver limits are reached.

Scan speed is determined by the receiver "dwell time" using menu selection 2-4. Dwell time is the duration that each channel is sampled for activity as the receiver scans up or down and is adjustable from 1 msec (fast) to 100 msec (slowest). Try experimenting with different durations until you reach the desired scan rate.

## Auto Memory Write

While scanning the VFO or a retuned memory, you can have the MARK-V FT-1000MP automatically write active channels into memories for later recall and scanning. As scanning pauses on activity, frequncy information is written into available memories in Group 1, or all enabled groups, until full. You can leave scanning unattended, if desired, then return later to recall and check memories for atation activity.

To enable this feature, recall memu selection 2-5, and select GROUP 1, ALL GROUPS, or OFF. Follow the procedures outlined for VFO Scanning, Memory Tuning, and also review the descriptions for Scan Resume Modes. Remember that for scanning to stop on activity, the squelch must be closed.

## Memory Scanning

The 99 memories in the MARK-V FT-1000MP offer some choices regarding how they are scanned, and, after the following brief description, you can decide how to tailor scanning for your operating needs.

When receiving on a recalled memory (with "MEM" displayed), you can scan all stored memories by just holding the microphone DWN or UP button for $1 / 2$-second to start. If you want scanning to pause on signals, you must first adjust the SQL control to silence the receiver (green "MAIN BUSY" indicator off) on a clear channel. Scanning pauses on any channel having a signal strong enough to open the squelch, and the two decimal points in the frequency display blink. You may need to readjust the SQL control to prevent scanning from stopping on only background noise. Scan speed is not affected by the microphone or panel [FAST] buttons, but is configured by menu selection 2-3. The memory scanning "dwell time" is adjustable from 100 (fast) ~ 1000 msec (slow).

To stop scanning, press the PTT switch (no transmission will occur), or a microphone button again. When scanning, keep in mind that the IPO and ATT selections also affect the squelch threshold by changing receiver front-end sensitivity.


## Memory Scan Skip

By default, all programmed memories are included for scanning. However, you can "flag" some of them to be skipped while scanning. To do this, recall the memory you want to be skipped, and hold either the front panel or microphone [FAST] button while pressing [M CK] momentarily so the "dash" between the group number and memory channel number disappears. If you have flagged a memory to be skipped, and later want to enable it again, just repeat the [FAST] + [M CK] procedure.


## Memory Scanning

## Memory "Masking.

You may want to hide some memories from operation, to simplify selection of others. To mask a displayed memory, while "MEM" is displayed, press and hold in $[A \triangle M$ ] for $1 / 2$ second until the double beep sounds. But be careful: if you do this instead while "M TUNE" is displayed - that is, after retuning the memory, the retuned data will overwrite the original memory data, but it will not be masked. So, if you have re-tuned the memory and don't want to save the changes, cancel them first by pressing [VFO(MEM)] once, and then hold $[A \triangle M]$ for $1 / 2$ second. No frequency digits appear for masked memories - just the two decimal points remain.

Masked memories are also skipped during scanning. If you don't overwrite a masked memory, you can unmask it simply by repeating the same procedure you used to mask it.


## Scan Resume Mode

There are three choices that determine how scanning will respond when activity is detected. Scan resume operation is configured by recalling menu selection 2-1, and choosing the desired mode. Below is an outline of each scan resume mode and how it operates.

Carrier Stop (default) - With the squelch closed, scanning pauses on signal activity, then resumes soon after the carrier disappears. With the squelch open, scanning will not continue unless the receiver is quieted again (SQL control).

Carrier Timed Stop - With the squelch closed, scanning pauses on activity, then resumes automatically after a preset duration ( 5 seconds by default), whether signal activity remains or not (time- delay resume).

Carrier Timed Slow - With the squelch closed, scanning slows down (but doesn't stop) for a preset duration ( 5 seconds by default), when activity is detected.

For the Timed Stop and Timed Slow modes, the pause duration can be set between 1 and 10 seconds with menu selection 2-7, or the scan pause (resume) feature can be disabled completely using menu selection 2-0. If disabled, scanning will not stop for any activity.

## Scan Skip Disable

After programming many memories, you may have tagged specific ones to be skipped during scanning. Should you later change your mind and want to scan all of them again, you don't have to go back and reenable each tagged one (there's an easier way!).

Recall menu selection 2-6 and change the "Scan All" setting from off to on. The memory tags are still retained, but ignored when this setting is turned on. To return to selective scanning, simply change the setting to "Off."

## Programmed Memory Scanning PMS Memories P1 ~ P9

To limit scanning (or tuning) to within a particular frequency range, you can use Programmed Memory Scanning (PMS) provided with nine special-purpose memories (P1 ~ P9). First, store the upper and lower frequency limits of the range in a consecutive pair of PMS memories (i.e., P1 \& P2, P2 \& P3, etc). For example, P 2 might contain the lower edge and P3 the upper. Next recall the first memory of the pair that hold the range you want to scan or tune, then nudge the main VFO knob to activate memory tuning ("PRGM" appears). Tuning and scanning are now within the limits of the selected PMS memory pair, keeping operation inside this programmed range.
Example: Limit tuning and scanning to the 17-m amateur band's limits.

- Press [VFO(MEM)] as necessary, to display "VFO." Tune to the low edge of the $17-\mathrm{m}$ band: 18.068 MHz , and select the desired mode (here, USB or CW).
- Rotate the VRF/MEM CH knob, and select memory P1. Then (while "MCK" is still blinking) hold in the [A M] key for $1 / 2$ second to write the VFO's frequency into P1.
- Press [VFO(MEM)] to select the VFO, and now tune to the high edge of the $17-\mathrm{m}$ band ( 18.168 MHz ). Be sure that the operating mode has not changed.
- Rotate the VRF/MEM CH knob, then select memory P2. Hold in the $[\mathbf{A} \perp \mathbf{M}$ ] key for $1 / 2$ second to write the VFO's frequency into P2.
- Now recall memory P1, and turn the tuning knob slightly (to activate memory tuning).
Tuning and scanning are now limited to the 18.068to $18.168-\mathrm{MHz}$ range until you press [VFO(MEM)] to return to memory channel or VFO operation. During PMS operation, you can also press (and hold in) [A M] to copy the displayed frequency to a memory, or $[\mathbf{M} \boldsymbol{A}]$ to write the displayed frequency to a VFO.


## Notice Regarding the VRF/MEM CH Knob

When the VRF feature is engaged, the VRF/MEM CH knob tunes the passband of the narrow input "Preselector" filter. During Memory operation, to enable memory channel selection, press the VRF/ MEM CH knob momentarily; rotation of the knob will now allow you to select other memories.

Enhanced Digital Signal Processing uses A/D (Analog to Digital) and D/A (Digital to Analog) conversion techniques under microprocessor control to achieve significant enhancement of signals at the audio and low-frequency IF levels. The major capabilities offered by EDSP lie in the area of heterodyne/random noise reduction and audio bandpass filtering. Digital filters have many advantages over their analog counterparts in that they can meet tighter specifications on parameters such as voltage and temperature drift and noise problems. And the hybrid filter architecture of the MARK-V FT-1000MP, utilizing extensive analog IF filtering to protect the DSP circuitry which follows, guarantees superior strong-signal performance under crowded band conditions.

The MARK-V FT-1000MP uses a 16 -bit NEC $\mu$ PD77016 CMOS digital signal processor chip featuring a $30-\mathrm{nS}$ Instructions Cycle, 33 MHz Clock frequency, a $16 \times 16$-bit and 40 -bit multiply accumulator, 40-bit Barrel Shifter, and 64 K Bytes Program ROM.

DSP enhancement is basically a four-step process. Audio (or EDSP IF) input is sampled several thousands of times per second, then the frequency and amplitude of the audio are converted into a digital representation of the analog waveform that resembles ascending and descending "staircases" by the A/D (analog-to-digital) converter. This is later changed into digital serial bitstream as raw data for analysis and processing.

Information is extracted from digital data, and the EDSP chip performs complex mathematical calculations according to pre-programmed routines known as algorithms. Algorithms are processed then compared against a set of parameters (or threshold if you will) based on a phenomenon known as "correlation." The degree of correlation depends on the incoming signal's characteristics: random noise has relatively little correlation, speech contains moderate correlation, with heterodynes (and QRM) being highly correlated. The EDSP microprocessor is programmed with various parameters corresponding to different known audio phenomena.

EDSP allows the frequency spectrum of a received signal to be modified according to a specific set of parameters for the desired effect (QRM reduction, audio tailoring, etc.). Certain types of audio interference leave a distinctive signature or "footprint," which can be recognized, and "processed out" of the digitally-reconstructed audio from the EDSP chip. Also, digital filters are constructed which emulate traditional low-pass, high-pass, band-pass, and band-stop filters, except with steep skirt shaping and performance possible with digital technology. EDSP also allows direct "digital" demodulation of audio for receive, as well as direct modulation of audio for transmit.

## EDSP

## EDSP Functions

The EDSP circuitry in the MARK-V FT-1000MP allows digital enhancement of both transmitted and received audio. A basic primer on DSP was given to inform you more about this capability than just the panel label and button location. Now you can customize its filtering capabilities and use it to reduce QRM and tailor audio response for each operating mode.

## EDSP Modulation

TX Audio Enhancement (Menu 4-4)
Four microphone audio responses can be chosen using menu selection 4-4. Since voice audio characteristics vary between people, these settings enable tailoring your transmitted audio for best clarity.

TX IF Filter Selection (Menu 5-9)
Normally, 2.4 kHz filters are selected for both the 455 kHz and 8.2 MHz Tx IF. However, with EDSP operation, you can keep the 2.4 kHz filter, or select the 6.0 kHz filter for maximum bandwidth and better frequency response on your transmitted audio. The resulting effect of this filter selection is directly related to menu selection $7-7$ (below). The desired filter is chosen with menu selection $5-9$, and is only active when EDSP is turned on. Note that your signal's actual bandwidth on SSB will not exceed that set by the IF analog filter, with a ( -6 dB ) bandwidth of approximately 2.4 kHz being typical.

## EDSP Modulation/Demodulation (Menu 7-7)

TX EDSP Modulation - Early-stage transmitted SSB audio may be applied directly to the EDSP circuitry for processing, bypassing the analog modulator. EDSP filter parameters can be matched to voice characteristics for optimum audio tailoring.

RX EDSP Demodulation - For SSB, CW and AM, receiver 3rd IF output is applied directly to EDSP circuitry for demodulation and processing, bypassing the analog product detector. Reduced noise is a primary benefit of the EDSP Demodulator, which may be used alone or in conjunction with EDSP filtering.

Menu selection 7-7 configures the settings for both the Rxand Tx EDSP modulation circuits (see table at the right). Note also that if the EDSP is turned off via menu selection 0-9, these circuits will revert to their analog counterparts.

## EDSP RX Audio Enhancement EDSP Contours

QRM reduction is accomplished by utilization of the various DSP filter networks. The front CONTOUR buttons select Low( $\boldsymbol{\pi}$ button,) Mid- ( $\boldsymbol{\square}$ button,) and Highcut ( $\boldsymbol{\square}$ button) filters, along with a band pass filter selection (see below).

The low-, mid-, and high-cut filters are pre-set for different audio emphasis, using mathematical algorithms developed after thousands of hours of on-the-air testing.
 The bandpass filter, activated when the [IDBT] button on the Shuttle Jog is pressed, is automatically programmed to match the analog IF passband established by the setting of the WIDTH and SHIFT controls. No manual sdjustment is required.

This CONTOUR LED indicates the current status of the EDSP Contour feature:

Glowing Green: Low-cut filter selected, Glowing Orange: Mid-cut filter selected, Glowing Red: High-cut filter selected, Off: EDSP Contour Off.

In actual operation, it may be very difficult to "predict" which Contour response will best enhance the sig-nal-to-noise recovery. So under difficult conditions, you should change selections often; don't be surprised if one selection suddenly causes the incoming signal to "jump" out of the background noise.

| EDS CONTOUR SELECTIONS |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CONTOUR <br> Selection | Filter Type | Application |
| $\boldsymbol{\square}$ | LCF (Low - Cut) | high-freq. empasis |
| $\boldsymbol{\square}$ | MCF (Mid - Cut) | high \& low freq <br> empasis |
| $\boldsymbol{B C F}$ (High - Cut) | low-freq. empasis |  |


| EDSP Modulation \& DemodulationMenu Selection " $7-7$ " |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Mode | Settings |
| SSB (RX) | $\begin{gathered} \text { OFF } \\ 100 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ 300 \sim 3800 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{gathered}$ |
| SSB (TX) | $\begin{gathered} \text { OFF } \\ 100 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ 150 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ 200 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ 300 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{gathered}$ |
| CW (RX) | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { OFF } \\ \mathrm{ON}(100 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz}) \end{gathered}$ |
| AM (RX) | $\begin{gathered} \text { OFF } \\ \text { ON }(70 \sim 3800 \mathrm{~Hz}) \end{gathered}$ |

## EDSP

## EDSP Noise Reducer

Noise reduction is accomplished by utilization of one of the four settings selected by the front panel [NR] button. Press the [NR] button to toggle between Noise Reduction "A," "B," "C," "D," and "OFF." Each setting has correlation parameters optimized to reduce random noise, static, pulse/ man-made noise and heterodynes, with little degradation of the desired signal. As with the Contour feature, it
 is difficult to predict which setting will be most effective under current noise conditions, so experiment with the settings as conditions change.

## EDSP APF (Audio Peak Filter)

In the CW mode, the front [APF] button sets the bandwidth of the EDSP's CW peaking filter. Press the [APF] button repeatedly to toggle between bandwidth selections " 240 Hz ," " 120 Hz ," " 60 Hz ," "DATA" (which is optimized bandwidth for FAX, PACKET or SSTV operation), and "OFF."


## IDBT

(Interlocked Digital Bandwidth Tracking) System
You can control the EDSP Contour's "Bandpass" filter characteristics according to the SHIFT and WIDTH knobs' settings. To do this, press the [IDBT] button on the right side of the Shuttle Jog to activate the IDBS feature. Doing so will automatically program the bandwidth of the Bandpass Contour filter to match the IF bandwidth set by these two controls; therefore, if you have narrowed the IF passband to 1.9 kHz using the WIDTH and SHIFT controls, the IDBT feature will automatically set the Contour filter's Bandpass mode to 1.9 kHz , as well.

## EDSP Auto Multiple Notch Filter

On page 48, we previously discussed basic IF notch filter operation and how it is used to attenuate heterodynes. EDSP offers multiple-notch capability within the AF (rather than IF) bandpass with the press of a button. With the conventional ( 455 kHz 3rd IF) notch filter, by comparison, only a single offending heterodyne at a time can be attenuated by pressing the [NOTCH] button and slowly rotating the NOTCH control. Notch tuning can sometimes be critical, as you have to position the control for maximum "depth" by ear.

With the multiple notch, the EDSP circuitry examines the AF bandpass and the correlation of the signals present. After correlation parameters are compared, unmodulated signals (heterodynes) are identified and notched out. As EDSP dynamically checks the audio, new heterodynes will be identified and notched, one by one, as they appear. See the illustration below.

Theoretically, an infinite amount of notches could be inserted to attenuate each new heterodyne; however, the total notch bandwidth would approach that of the audio passband, and, progressively notch all audio. One limitation of the EDSP auto multiple notch feature is that it is only for use with SSB modes; attempting to use it on CW would cause the CW signals to disappear - not the desired function of a CW filter!

The effect of the EDSP notch filter will not be observed on the S-meter, as the EDSP is outside of the AGC circuit's loop. The manual IF notch, however, is within the AGC loop, so you should use the IF notch for particularly strong interference sources.


EDSP Auto Multiple Notch Action

## EDSP

The two Notch circuits may be enabled and/or disabled using menu selection 2-9. It is important to take note of the selection options available:

IF NOTCH - Manual IF notch operation using the front panel knob with the same name. The EDSP notch is not accessible in this mode.

AUTO DSP - When EDSP is engaged (the green "EDSP" LED is lit), the [NOTCH] button serves as an On/Off switch for the EDSP auto-notch filter. The EDSP notch filter automatically locates existing heterodynes and notches them out. Any additional heterodynes are also notched as they appear. The IF Notch is accessible only when the EDSP is turned off.

SELECT - If EDSP is engaged (menu selection 0-9 not set to "off"), and the [NOTCH] button is pressed, both the EDSP Auto-Notch and IF notch operation take effect simultaneously. If EDSP were disabled via menu selection 0-9, the IF Notch will still be available.

Note that there is a "short-cut" available, affording easy access to menu selection 2-9. Just press and hold in the [FAST] key, and press the [NOTCH] button.

## Important Note About EDSP

An advantage of EDSP is the flexibility for the user to customize or "tailor" received and transmitted audio. Menu selections 4-4, 5-9, and 7-7 each have distinct effects on the sound of your transmitted audio. The "ultimate" combination of these settings will of course vary between users personal taste, and for the desired effect (distinctive audio, QRM penetration, etc.).
The easiest way to immediately hear the effect of different EDSP settings is to use the transceiver's built-in MONITOR circuit to listen to your audio while transmitting. In this way, you can step through the various setting combinations, and select the ones that appeal the most to you, or the receiving station.

## Remote Control Operation

## Introduction

You can select and activate various transceiver functions via the optional FH-1 Remote Control Keypad (available from your Yaesu dealer) connected to the REMOTE jack on the rear panel of the transceiver.

Four transceiver remote control features are available via menu selection 7-9. Once the desired remote control operating mode is selected, pressing a key activates one of the functions available in that operating mode; the function activated by a key closure might be a CW message playback, a contest number being incremented upward, or a front panel function being duplicated.

The four remote control features available are:
I. Contest Memory Keyer - The recording and playback of repetitive contest messages are accomplished via the keypad.
II. VFO/Memory Function Control - In this mode, the remote control keypad duplicates the front panel keys that relate to VFO/Memory selection and programming.
III. Main VFO-A Control - In this mode, the remote control keypad duplicates the functions of the front panel BAND keypad (keys "0" ~"9"), plus [SUB(CE)] and [ENT]) as applied to the Main VFO.
IV. Sub VFO B Control - Same as above, except keypad inputs are applied to the Sub VFO.
The features and programming techniques for the remote control features are discussed below, beginning with the contest memory keyer.

## I. Contest Keyer Control

The MARK-V FT-1000MP includes a contest memory keyer which includes a number of automated features which reduce operator fatigue during long hours of contest operating.

## Features

The keyer offers six CW message memories that can be used to store your callsign and/or repetitive messages like "CQ TEST DE <callsign>" or "TU QRZ <callsign>." Additionally, a three- or four-digit contest serial number "001, 002...." may be imbedded into the first memory location for contest exchange use. The contest number can be incremented/decremented manually, reset to an arbitrary number (in the middle of a contest), and can also be played back using "cut" numbers ("5NN TT1, 5NN TT2..."), if desired.

Linear amplifier or external antenna tuner adjustment may also be assisted, thanks to the momentary [TUNE] key on the keypad. Via menu selection 4-3, the tune-up power output may be limited to a maximum of 50 or 10 Watts, instead of the usual 200 Watts, and the [TUNE] then serves as a momentary (push and hold) key which activates the transmitter and puts out a carrier for tuning purposes.

Let's now look at the storage and recall capabilities of the contest memory keyer.


## Remote Control Operation

## 1. Contest Number Memory

The [\#] key allows storage of a message of up to 20 characters in length. Within this message, a contest sequential serial number may be imbedded during the programming process by sending "???" (three Question Marks) in the place where the contest number is desired. The Question Marks should be separated only by a letter space, not by a word space. Thus, to send "5NN 001, 5 NN 002," and so forth, you send " 5 NN ???" (not " 5 NN ? ? ?") during memory storage.

A contest number may only be imbedded in the memory location activated by [\#] key.

You can manually increment or decrement the number (in case you need to repeat or "catch up" to the correct contest number) by pushing the [\#UP] key to increment, or the [\#DWN] key to decrement.

To reset an arbitrary contest number (in the middle of the contest, when you may have been using a different transceiver on a different band, for example), select menu selection 7-3. Now rotate the Main Dial to select the next-to-be-used contest number, and press [ENT] to save your new number and exit.

To abbreviate certain numbers in the contest exchange, select menu selection 7-6. In this Menu area, substitutions of Morse letters for (longer) numbers can be accomplished. For example, the keyer may be commanded to send "T" for "Zero," "A" for "One," "U" for "Two," and " N " for "Nine" while leaving all other numbers in their normal (longer) formats.

See the chart below for details of the selections available.


To select between three-digit contest numbers (e.g. " 599001 ") and four digit contest numbers (e.g. "5991234"), select menu selection 7-6, then rotate the Sub Dial to the final selection, which is the number of playback digits. Select the desired number of digits, then press [ENT] to save the setting and exit. Note that, if you begin with a three-digit contest number, the MARK-V FT-1000MP will automatically switch over to four-digit numbering after QSO \#999, so it generally is best to select three-digit numbering.

## 2. CQ or ID Memory

The [ID] key allows storage and recall of any message of up to 20 characters in length. Because of the convenient location of [ID] key on the FH-1 Remote Control Keypad option, this memory location is most ideally suitable for your main "CQ TEST" message or for your callsign (for one-touch use in a pile-up, for example).

## 3. User Message Memories 1-4

Keys [CH 1] ~ [CH 4] allow storage and recall of messages of up to 50 characters in length. These memory locations are more suitable for longer messages which cannot be programmed into the "Contest Number" or "ID" memory locations.

## 4. Message Storage

The [STO] key is used in the message memorization process. Push [STO] followed by one of the message playback keys ([\#], [ID], or [CH 1] ~ [CH 4]), then send (on your keyer paddle) the message to be stored, then press the [STO] key to terminate the memory storage process.

## 5. Message Monitor

## (Playback without Transmitting)

The [MONI] key may be used to review the contents of a memory location, or to determine the next-to-be-used contest number, without transmitting the message over the air.

To use this feature, the [MONI] key on the front panel of the transceiver must be turned off. The reason for this is that the [MONI] key activates the RF keying monitor, which requires a transmitted signal in order to function.

To check the contents of the "ID" memory slot, for example, press [MONI] then [ID]. You will hear the message which currently is stored in the "ID" slot in the speaker or headphones. To check to see what the next-to-be-sent contest number is (in case you've forgotten, etc.), press [MONI] then [\#]. The contents of the "\#" memory slot will be played (e.g. "599388 BK"), and the contest number will not increment after play-

## Remote Control Operation

back in this mode; the contest number only increments if the message is sent over the air.

Remember, if pressing the [MONI] key, then a memory playback key, has no effect, you probably have the [MONI] button pushed in. De-activate the RF keying monitor to allow yourself to hear the stored message.

## 6. Tune Mode

Pressing the [TUNE] key activates a transmitted carrier for as long as the key is held in; this is useful for adjustment of a linear amplifier or external antenna tuner, or for antenna performance comparisons over the air.

The power output level to be used for tuning is programmable via menu selection 4-3. In this Menu selection, maximum power output levels of $10 \mathrm{~W}, 50 \mathrm{~W}$, or 200W may be chosen. The front panel RF PWR control allows adjustment of the power level up to the maximum power output selected via menu selection 4-3.

## Contest Keyer Operation

Programming of the six available message storage locations is accomplished by a simple keyed and keyer paddle input sequence. Only lambic (not "Bug") keying can be used for storage of CW messages, and we recommend that menu selection 7-0 be set to "lambic 2 " during message storage, although you may prefer to use "lambic 1 " during manual sending once the desired messages are stored.
Example: Program "CQ TEST DX1DX DX1DX" into the "ID" Memory Slot.
$\square$ Be sure that the FH-1 (or your home-built) keypad is plugged into the rear panel REMOTE jack.
$\square$ Press the [STO] key, followed by [ID]. This selects the "ID" memory as the memory location to be utilized.

- Using your keyer paddle, send "CQ TEST DX1DX DX1DX" followed by another press of key [STO] to end the storage process for this memory location. Be careful to pause slightly after each word so as to leave a word space in the message string.
$\square$ To play back the message memory without transmitting, press the [MONI] key followed next by [ID]. If you don't hear anything, check to be sure that the "MONI" LED on the bottom-left-hand edge of the BOWMAN front panel is not illuminated.
$\square$ To transmit the CQ message, just press [ID].
Message memories $1 \sim 4$ (keys [CH 1] ~ [CH 4]) are programmed, played back, and transmitted in the same manner; however, you can enter up to 50 characters in each of these. Particularly if you have a long callsign, you may wish to use key [ID] for storage of
just your callsign, then use message memories $1 \sim 4$ (keys [CH 1] ~ [CH 4]) for your "CQ Contest" messages.

Note also that if you want to send a message multiple times, you can press the playback key more than once; at the end of the first message segment, the message will restart and be sent again. This is useful if you want to call "CQ" while getting a drink from the refrigerator.

You may then send a "K" manually when the automatic message generation is completed after the desired number of repeats.
Example: Program " 599001 BK" as an initial contest number (to be incremented after each QSO):
$\square$ Following the procedure described above, press the [STO] key then the [\#] key.
ㅁ Now send the contest exchange, but send "???" at the point in the message where you want the number to appear. In this example, send "599??? BK" then press [STO] to terminate the entry. To send "5NN001 BK" ("N" replacing "9"), modify your sending accordingly (the number-cutting protocol in menu selection 7-6 only affects numbers sent within the "???" area). If you want to separate the signal report and the contest number, send "5NN ??? BK" (add a word space between the report and the question marks).
$\square$ To play back the just-stored message without transmitting, and without causing the contest number to increment automatically, press the [MONI] key followed by [\#] key. You may do this as many times as you want and the contest number will stay the same. If you transmit the message by pressing the [\#] key alone, however, the contest number will automatically increment, and another press of the [\#] key will cause " 599002 BK" to be sent (followed by "599003 BK" the following time, and so forth).

- If the other station asks for a repeat of your contest exchange, remember that the number will have incremented automatically after you sent it. Press the [DWN] key to return to the previous number, then press [\#] key to repeat the exchange for the other station. If you need to increment the number manually for some reason, the [\#UP] key may be used in the same manner.
- If, for some reason, the contest number generated via [\#] key is significantly different from the desired number, it may be reset via menu selection 7-3. From this menu selection, you may set the next-to-beused contest number to any value between 0000 and 9999 by rotating the Main Dial; press [ENT] to save the new setting and exit.


## Advanced Features

## Remote Control Operation

## II. VFO/Memory Control

Menu selection 7-9 also allows utilization of the Re mote Control Keypad for VFO and Memory control. The front panel [VFO(MEM)], [A B], [AンB], [M-A], [M CK], [A - M], [RCL], [STO] and [DUAL] keys, and VRF/ MEM CH knob are duplicated on the Remote Control Keypad.

## III. MAIN VFO-A Control

Selection of this mode via menu selection $7-9$ duplicates the action of the 12-key front panel BAND keypad on the front panel of the MARK-V FT-1000MP. Direct frequency entry and one-touch band change are possible on both the Main and Sub VFOs, exactly as on the front panel keypad.

## IV. SUB VFO-B Control

This function is essentially identical to "Main VFOA Control" as described above. However, when the
 [ENT] key is pushed to begin direct frequency entry, the frequency input will be applied to the Sub VFO-B register, not the Main VFO-A register. This allows the operator to use the transceiver's front panel keypad for the Main VFO, and the remote keypad for the Sub VFO, thus reducing the required keystrokes by one.

Note that, in the Sub VFO-B Control mode, pushing [SUB(CE)] then [ENT] does not shift frequency entry control to the Main VFO-A (which is the "sub" VFO of Sub VFO-B). In this mode, frequency can only be applied to the Sub VFO-B; there is no direct frequency entry pathway to Main VFO-A.

## User-Customized Operating Mode

## Overview

This mode recalls a pre-configured operating "environment" (mode, filter selections, offsets, etc.) by pressing and hold in the [PKT] key on the front panel.

This can be useful for storing your favorite combination of operational settings for a mode you often use. Digital operators who go through the various procedures of combining filter selections, carrier and display offsets, etc., for a custom environment optimized for FAX or SSTV (as an example) can store these settings for easy recall. For special modes that require unique configuration of transceiver settings that are not used elsewhere, the "USER" mode comes in handy for storing these parameters while keeping other transceiver settings default for general operation.

The following parameters are user-customized by recalling menu selection 8-6. Operating parameters are chosen by turning the SUB VFO-B tuning knob, while parameter settings are changed with the MAIN VFO-A knob (see below).

| Custom User-Mode Settings Menu Selection " 8 -6" |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Selected with: |  | Comments: |
| Sub VFO B Dial | Main VFO A Dial |  |
| MODE | LSB, USB, CW (USB), CW (LSB), RTTY (LSB), RTTY (USB), PACKET (LSB) | Select the operating situation to which tha custom setting will be applied. |
| DISPLAY OFFSET | $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ | *1 |
| RXPLL | $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ | *1 |
| RX CARRIER | $450-460 \mathrm{kHz}$ | *1 |
| TX PLL | $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ | $\times 1$ |
| TX CARRIER | $450-460 \mathrm{kHz}$ | $\times 1$ |
| RTTY OFFSET | $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ | *1 |
| PRESET MODE | OFF/SSTV/FAX | *2 |
| $※ 1$ : the tables on pages 106,107 , and 110 list various menu selected receive and display offsets for each mode. <br> $\times 2$ : Settings are factory preset \& non-adjustable. |  |  |

Mode - Select from LSB, USB, CW (upper or lower), RTTY (upper or lower), or Packet (lower sideband only).

Display Offset - Choose a custom offset $\pm 5.000$ kHz (in $5-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps) to be displayed when the "USER" mode is active.

Tx and Tx PLL Offset - Choose a custom PLL offset $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ (in $5-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps) to take effect when the "USER" mode is active.

Tx and Tx Carrier - Changes the carrier injection frequency between $450-460 \mathrm{kHz}$.

RTTY Custom Shift - Choose a custom (non-standard) RTTY shift of $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ (in $5-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps) when the "User" mode is active.
"Easy Setting" - this allows choosing one of two factory-configured settings optimized for either SSTV (slow scan television) or FAX (facsimile) operation.

With the user settings customized as desired, press and hold in the [PKT] key (its red LED blinks for three seconds when activated) to recall the "User" mode. The custom settings will take effect, and the display changes to reflect the new operating mode. To exit the "User" Mode, simply press any band, mode or function key so the red LED in the [PKT] key turns off.

Note: see pages 106 and 107 for a complete listing of default settings according to operating mode.

## Important!

While the "USER" Mode allows customizing operation for various operating environments, changing some settings (especially the PLL offset and carrier injection) can adversely affect transceiver operation. Before making any "USER" Mode adjustments, ensure you have a firm understanding on how changing these affect transceiver operation and frequency display. If you are not sure, we recommend leaving them as set (to their default values shown in the table).

You can return all transceiver settings (menu selections) to their default values at any time by performing a CPU reset. Simply hold the [SUB(CE)], [29(0)], \& [ENT] keys together while turning the transceiver on.

## Optional DVS-2 Digital Voice Recorder

## Overview

The DVS-2 is a digital voice recorder designed especially for SSB, AM, and FM operation with newer model Yaesu transceivers having a special jack for connection of the DVS-2 on the rear panel. It offers two independent functions:
$\square$ Recording received signals for playback later in the loudspeaker or headphone;

- Recording signals, using the microphone,for playback over the air (during transmission).
Each mode uses its own memory, so both modes can be used to retain data at the same time. Operating details are provided with the DVS-2, but a summary is provided here.


## Installation

Connect the DVS-2 cable to the DVS-2 jack on the rear of the transceiver. You must also have a microphone connected to the MIC jack on the front panel of the transceiver to record your voice for transmissions.


## DVS-2 Controls

## (1), (2), \& (3): PLAY, REC \& TX LEDs

These LEDs light or flash to indicate the status of the DVS-2. The "PLAY" LED glows green when playing back stored data, the "REC" LED glows yellow when recording, and the "TX" LED glows red when the DVS2 is keying the transmitter to play back over the air. Also, the "PLAY" and "REC" LEDs flash when waiting for you to make a memory selection (with a numbered button).

## (4) MESSAGE MODE Slide Switch

This selects the mode for recording messages to be played back over the air: for either two 8 -second messages, or four 4 -second messages. Changing your selection does not erase previously stored messages, so you can use this switch to combine two pairs of 4second messages.

## (5) MESSAGE NR Selection Buttons \& LEDs

These buttons select which message slot to record via the microphone or play back over the air. The LED above each button glows red when a message has been stored in that slot. The [3] and [4] keys (and LEDs) are only functional when the MESSAGE MODE switch is set to the [ $4 \times 4 \mathrm{SEC}]$ position.

## (6) MONI Button

After recording a message via the microphone, press this button (followed by a message number button) to play back that message in the loudspeaker (instead of over the air).

## (7) MEMO Button

Press this button (followed by a message number button) to record a message via the microphone.

## (8) PLAY Button

After recording received signals, press this button to play them back in the transceiver's loudspeaker.

## (9) REC Button

Press this button to start the receiver recorder. The recorder will run continuously (recording an 16 -second loop) until you press the [STOP] button.

## (10) STOP Button

Press this button to stop any recording or playback operation.

## Optional DVS-2 Digital Voice Recorder

## Message Recording

(from MAIN or SUB Receiver Audio)
When used in this mode, the DVS-2 maintains a continuous recording of the last (approximately) 16 seconds of audio from either the main or sub-receiver. This can be particularly helpful in picking out callsigns during a pileup, as you can replay the same recording as often as you like (until you record over it). The record/ playback process in this mode is analogous to an 16second "endless tape" - that is, you can turn the recorder on and off to record up to a total of 16 seconds of small segments of audio, or you can leave the recorder running to get one 16-second segment. In any case, the recorder overwrites data more than 16 (recording) seconds old.
$\square$ To start the receiver recorder, just press the [REC] button. The yellow "REC" LED will light (and stay lit).
$\square$ When you hear something you want to play back, press the [STOP] button (the "REC" LED will turn off), and then press the [PLAY] button. Now the green "PLAY" LED will light as recorded audio is played back through the main receiver audio channel.

Note that if you record for less than 16 seconds, playback will start at the point you first started recording (no "rewind" necessary). However, if you record for more than 16 seconds, playback will begin at the point 16 seconds before you stopped recording. In either case, playback will repeat any recorded audio every 16 seconds.

To stop the playback at any time, simply press [STOP]. If you then press [PLAY] again, playback will continue from the point you stopped it.

## Playback

(on the Air of Recorded Receiver Audio)
Once you have recorded an incoming transmission from another station, you can play it back to them by pressing the [PLAY] button on the DVS-2, followed immediately by the MOX switch on the front panel of the MARK-V FT-1000MP. This can be handy if you wish to advise another station of an anomalous signal condition, for example.

Note: Communications-privacy regulations may require you not to divulge the results of a prior contact (or a receiving session) to a third party. Consult the regulations for your country to ensure full compliance with your countries regulations.

## Message Recording <br> (from Microphone Audio)

This mode allows the DVS-2 to record either two 8second messages or four 4-second messages of audio from the microphone, such as contest exchanges or station IDs. Each can then be played back, either in monitor mode (without transmission), or directly over the air. Note that the digital memory used in this mode is independent from that used for receiver recording (so you can store both types of memory without interfering with one another).

The 8 - and 4 -second messages share the same memory, so two 4 -second message segments (1 and 2 or 3 and 4) can be combined into one 8 -second message for transmission, as indicated in the following table.

| Memory Segments \& Message Numbers |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Button Pressed | Segment(s) Used in Record/Playback |  |
|  | $2 \times 8$-second Message Mode | $4 \times 4$-second Message Mode |
| 1 | Segments 1 \& 2 | Segment 1 |
| 2 | Segments 3 \& 4 | Segment 2 |
| 3 | No Function | Segment 3 |
| 4 | No Function | Segment 4 |

Before you record for transmission, check that the [MESSAGE MODE] Switch is set for the size message you want to record, either 4 -second or 8 -second (see the table above and the Example in the next section for help with this decision). You do not need to press the PTT switch while recording a message, although you can, in which case your audio will be transmitted and recorded simultaneously.

## Optional DVS-2 Digital Voice Recorder

$\square$ Get your microphone ready, and then press the [MEMO] button (the yellow "REC" LED will blink).
$\square$ Now press the numbered key for the segment (or segment pair) to record (only [1] or [2] for the 8second mode), and start talking (do not press the PTT switch unless you want to transmit at the same time you are recording).

The "REC" LED will stop blinking and stay on for the recording period (4 or 8 seconds), and then turn off. Also, the red LED above the numbered key you pressed will come on (if this segment was previously empty) and stay on, indicating this segment is now storing data.

To stop recording at any point before the selected segment's time limit is up, simply press STOP.

This is the preferred method, since it eliminates any "dead time" remaining from your last-recorded word and end of the time segment (which would keep your transmitter unnecessarily keyed for a short period). In any case, your message can not exceed the 4- or 8second limit.

Don't worry if you didn't have enough time to finish your phrase, you can repeat the above steps to rerecord the same message - the previous message will be overwritten (note that there is no "rewind" step required).

## Message Monitor

(Playback Without Transmitting)
You can check the contents of a memory segment or pair without playing it back over the air, just by pressing [MONI] followed by the appropriate numbered key.

The green "REC" LED blinks until you press the numbered key, and then stays on during the playback period. We recommend always using this to check the results immediately after making a recording and before playing it back over the air. If you have recorded several 4-second segments that you intend to combine during playback, move the MESSAGE MODE switch to the [ 2 x 8 SEC] position to hear how the segments sound when played back together. Note from the table on the preceding page that, in the 8 -second mode, the [1] button plays back segments 1 and 2, while the [2] button plays back segments 3 and 4 .

## Message Transmission

("On The Air•田layback)
After recording a memory segment, you can play it back over the air by pressing the appropriate numbered button. The green "PLAY" and red "TX" LEDs will both light for a maximum of either four or eight seconds, according to the setting of the MESSAGE MODE switch.

Note! Normally, pressing a numbered message key on the DVS-2 activates the MARK-V FT-1000MP transmitter and sends the recorded message. If you would like to disable PTT control from the DVS-2, recall menu selection 4-7 and change the setting to "OFF." Now, transmission is only possible using the microphone PTT or MOX switches.

## Receiver Recording with the MARK-V FT-1000MP

As the DVS-2 uses only one receiver audio channel of the MARK-V FT-1000MP, you can play back recordings without missing real-time action by pressing $[\mathbf{A} \perp \mathbf{B}]$ to set the two VFOs to the same frequency.

With stereo headphones, this allows you to continually monitor signals on the sub VFO audio channel while playing back recording on the main channel.

## Selecting Receiver Audio

As mentioned earlier, the DVS-2 can record audio from either the Main or Sub receiver. To choose the desired receiver, recall memory selection 4-6 and pick either MAIN VFO or SUB VFO as the default receiver.

## Phone Patch Operation

## Overview

Phone patch operation allows linking your MARKV FT-1000MP to the public telephone line to provide two-way simplex communications for MARS operation, or on behalf of a third parties. The MARK-V FT-1000MP may be used with the LL-7 phone patch unit installed in the optional SP-8 external loudspeaker, or with phone patch units from other manufacturers. The diagram at the bottom of the page shows interconnection for the SP-8/LL-7 combination; be sure to consult the documentation provided with units of other manufacture for installation instructions.

## Operation

Phone patch $T x / R x$ switching may be done manually using the PTT method, or automatically using the VOX circuit of the transceiver. While the PTT method does not require balancing the bridge circuit in the LL7, it does require more work by the operator: switching the microphone PTT or transceiver MOX button at each "over" during patched conversations. Therefore, most operators prefer to use the VOX method whenever the telephone signal-to-noise level permits. If the telephone noise level is high, however, the PTT method may still be necessary, so you should become familiar with both methods.

Regardless of which patch control method is used, you may need to instruct the person on the telephone to speak slowly at a clear normal voice, and to say "over" and then keep quiet when they expect a response from the other radio station. This serves as a notice to you (if you are using PTT control) to switch to receive while signaling the other station to go ahead and transmit, and will help avoid "doubling" with the other station.

During all phone patch operation you should monitor both sides of the conversation at all times (this may be required by law). This requires a telephone at the operating position.

Refer to the LL-7 Instruction Sheet for further details on phone patch setup and operation.

## Note

You may need to contact your telephone company for permission to connect another device to the phone circuit. Also, you should use a proper 600 Ohm, three-way transformer if connecting the LL7 with a telephone set to the same phone line.


## Tuning Meter Re-Calibration

The multi-function meter offers either flashing single or dual segments to indicate properly tuned CW or FSK (RTTY/PKT) stations. An explanation of tuning indications is on page 42.

## CW Tuning

From the factory, the single CW tuning segment is calibrated (centered) for the default CW Pitch setting of 700 Hz . If you change the CW Pitch (page 56) to other than 700 Hz , you should re-calibrate the meter so that station center-tuning will match the new CW Pitch. Calibration is a simple process, and only requires a small Phillips screwdriver:

## CW Tuning Meter Calibration

(after CW Pitch adjustment)

- Open the access panel on the transceiver top case to expose the ALC Unit.
- After setting the desired CW Pitch, press the [SPOT] button to toggle the CW spot tone (which matches the CW Pitch) on. Use a small screwdriver to slowly turn CW control in the top access panel so the center meter tuning segment turns on.
- This completes the calibration for CW tuning; replace the panel, and turn off the spot tone.


## RTTY Tuning

RTTY tuning segments are calibrated (centered) for default $170-\mathrm{Hz}$ shift, using a mark/space pair of 2125/ 2295 Hz . If you change the default RTTY shift (menu selection 6-0) to other than 170 Hz , you should re-calibrate the meter so that mark/space tuning segments match the new tone pair:

## RTTY Tuning Meter Calibration

(after changing RTTY Shift)

- Open the access panel on the transceiver top case to expose the ALC Unit.
$\square$ After setting the desired RTTY shift, recall menu selection 4-2, and select "bEEP-tun" using the SUB VFO-B tuning knob.
- Rotate the MAIN VFO-A knob to display (and oscillate) the center frequency of the mark/space tone pair for the shift you are using ( $170 \mathrm{~Hz}=2210 \mathrm{~Hz}$, $425 \mathrm{~Hz}=2125 \mathrm{~Hz}, 850 \mathrm{~Hz}=2550 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ).
- Use a small screwdriver to slowly turn RTTY control in the top access panel so the center meter tuning segment turns on.

This completes the RTTY calibration, replace the panel, and turn off the beep tone.

## Packet Tuning

The dual packet tuning segments are calibrated (centered) to the default $200-\mathrm{Hz}$ shift tones used for 300 -baud HF packet. These tones use a mark/space pair of $2025 / 2225 \mathrm{~Hz}$. If you change the default PKT tones (menu selection 6-5) to other than $2025 / 2225 \mathrm{~Hz}$, you should re-calibrate the meter so that mark/space tuning segments will match the new tone pair:

## PKT Tuning Meter Calibration

(after changing PKT Tones)
ㅁ Open the access panel on the transceiver top case to expose the ALC Unit.

- After selecting the desired tone pair, recall menu selection 4-2, and select "bEEP-tun" using the SUB VFO-B knob.
$\square$ Rotate the MAIN VFO-A knob to display (and oscillate) the center frequency of the mark/space tone pair you are using ( $1170 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1700 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2125 \mathrm{~Hz}$, 2210 Hz - see page 58).
- Use a small screwdriver to slowly turn PKT control in the top access panel so the center meter tuning segment turns on.

This completes the PKT calibration, replace the panel, and turn off the beep tone.

## Caution!

Do not adjust TUM-M control in the top access panel by mistake, as this will adversely affect meter tuning indication, requiring factory re-alignment!


Meter Calibration Points (Top Panel Access)

## CAT System Computer Control

## Overview

The CAT (Computer Aided Transceiver) System in the MARK-V FT-1000MP provides control of frequency, VFO, memory, and other settings such as dualchannel memories and diversity reception using an external personal computer. This allows multiple control operations to be fully automated as single mouse clicks or keystroke operations on the computer keyboard.

The MARK-V FT-1000MP has a built-in level converter, allowing direct connection from the rear-panel CNT jack to the serial port of your computer without the need of any external boxes.

Each time a command instruction is being received from the computer via the ©NT port, the "CNT" indicator appears in the display, then turns off afterward. You will need a serial cable for connection to the RS232C (serial or COM port) connector on your computer. Purchase a standard serial cable (not the so-called "null modem" type), ensuring it has the correct gender and number of pins (some serial COM port connectors use a 9-pin rather than 25-pin configuration). If your computer uses a custom connector, you may have to construct the cable. In this case, refer to the technical documentation supplied with your computer for correct data connection.

Yaesu Musen does not produce CNTT System operating software due to the wide variety of personal computers and operating systems in use today. However, the information provided in this chapter explains the serial data structure and opcodes used by the CVT system. This information, along with the short programming examples, is intended to help you start writing programs on your own. As you become more familiar with CAT operation, you can customize programs later on for your operating needs and discover the true operating potential of this system.

There are some commercially produced software packages available, as well as various shareware and freeware programs. To find out more information, contact your dealer or check advertisements in current amateur radio journals and publications. Other valuable information sources include amateur radio and PC users-groups, packet radio and PC bulletin boards (BBS), and amateur radio hamfests.

## CAT Data Protocol

Serial data is passed via the $\mathbf{X X T}$ jack on the rear panel of the transceiver at 4800 bits $/ \mathrm{sec}$. All commands sent from the computer to the transceiver consist of five-byte blocks, with up to 200 ms between each byte. The last byte sent in each block is the instruction opcode, while the first four bytes of each block are arguments: either parameters for that instruction, or dummy values (required to pad the block out to five bytes):

| CAT 5-BYTE COMMAND STRUCTURE |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Byte 1 | Byte 2 | Byte 3 | Byte 4 | Byte 5 |
| Argument | Argument | Argument | Argument | Instruction |
| OPCODE |  |  |  |  |

Each byte sent consists of one start bit, 8 data bits, no parity bit and two stop bits:

| CAT DATA BYTE FORMAT |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Start <br> Bit | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Stop <br> Bit | Stop <br> Bit |

There are twenty-nine instruction opcodes for the MARK-V FT-1000MP, listed in the table on pages 94 ~ 97. Most of these duplicate menu programming settings or options, or else emulate front panel button functions. Notice that several instructions require no specific parameters. However, every Command Block sent to the transceiver must always consist of five bytes.

The $\mathbf{X A T}$ control program you are writing must construct the 5-byte block, by selecting the appropriate instruction opcode, organizing the parameters, if any, and providing unused (dummy) argument bytes for padding the block to its required 5-byte length (the dummy bytes can contain any value). The resulting five bytes are then sent, opcode last, from the computer to the MARK-V FT-1000MP CPU via the serial port and CAT jack on the transceiver rear panel.

## CAT System Computer Control

## Constructing and Sending CAT Commands

## Example \#1: Set Main VFO-A to 14.25000 MHz ;

$\square$ First determine the opcode for the desired instruction by referring to the CAT Commands Table. A good idea would be to store these opcodes within the program, so they can be looked up when the user requests the corresponding command.

- Here the instruction is "Set Main VFO Frequency," so the opcode (last byte of the block) is OAH.
Note - "H" s following each byte value indicate hexadecimal (base 16) values.
$\square$ Build the four argument byte values from the desired frequency by breaking it into 2-digit blocks (BCD "packed decimal" format). Note that a leading zero is always required in the hundreds-of-MHz place (and another in the tens-of-MHz if below 10 MHz ).
- Breaking 14.250.00 MHz into its BCD component, we arrive at:

| $\begin{gathered} \hline \hline 10 \text { 's } \\ \mathrm{Hz} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \hline 100 \text { 's } \\ \mathrm{Hz} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \hline \text { 1's } \\ & \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \hline 10 \text { 's } \\ & \text { kHz } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 100 ' s \\ \mathrm{kHz} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \hline \text { 1's } \\ \mathrm{MHz} \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{l\|} \hline \hline 10 \text { 's } \\ \mathrm{MHz} \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{l\|l\|} \hline 100 ' s \\ \mathrm{MHz} \end{array}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 1 | 0 |
| 00 |  | 50 |  | 42 |  | 01 |  |
| Byte 1 |  | Byte 2 |  | Byte 3 |  | Byte 4 |  |

$\square$ Inserting the 4 -byte BCD-coded frequency ( 00,50 , 42, 01), the resulting 5 -byte block should now look like this (again, in hex format):

| Byte 1 | Byte 2 | Byte 3 | Byte 4 | Byte 5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 00 | 50 | 42 | 01 | 0 OH |
| DATA/ARGUMENT BYTES |  |  |  |  |

$\square$ Send these five bytes to the transceiver, in the order shown in the table above - from left-to-right: $\mathbf{0 0}$ 504201 0AH.

Example \#2: Activate a RX Clarifier Offset of +3.5 kHz .

- Clarifier settings are controlled from opcode 09 H . The first four parameter bytes determine the type of offset, direction, and frequency displacement.According to the example, the first byte would be $50(500 \mathrm{~Hz})$, the second $03(3000 \mathrm{~Hz})$, followed by $\mathbf{0 0 H}$ (for +offset), $\mathbf{8 1 H}$ (TX CLAR on) and then opcode 09H. Remember that the 1st and 2nd bytes are in BCD format.
$\square$ Completing the command byte sequence, we would send, in sequence, $50 \mathrm{H}, \mathbf{0 3 H}, 00 \mathrm{H}, 81 \mathrm{H}, 09 \mathrm{H}$, to effect the Tx Clarifier offset.

| Byte 1 | Byte 2 | Byte 3 | Byte 4 | Byte 5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{5 0 H}$ | $\mathbf{0 3 H}$ | $\mathbf{0 0 H}$ | $\mathbf{8 1 H}$ | $\mathbf{0 9 H}$ |
| DATA/ARGUMENT BYTES |  |  |  |  |

You should be getting a feel for the CNT command structuring sequence, let's move to the next step; reading transceiver operational data.

## CAT System Computer Control

## Downloading <br> MARK-V FT-1000MP Data

On command, the MARK-V FT-1000MP will download some or all ( 1,863 bytes) of its operational data. This data block contains all current transceiver settings. In addition, the current meter indication ( Tx or Rx ) is read, digitized and returned as well. This provides a wealth of information in near real-time that can be processed by your program or the running application for control purposes or display readouts. By regular or intermittent requests for this data, the program (and you) can be kept continuously up-to-date on the status of the MARK-V FT-1000MP operating environment.

The following four commands cause the MARK-V FT-1000MP to download various operational and internally stored settings via the CNT port:

Status Update (10H) - causes the transceiver to return all or portions of its RAM table (up to 1,863 bytes).

Status Flags Request (FAH) - obtains only the first 6 bytes (the Status Flags), plus 2 extra "Model ID" bytes ( 10 H and 00 H ).

Read $\operatorname{Meter}$ (F7H) - returns the meter deflection (0 - FFH) repeated in four bytes, followed by one "filler" byte (F7H).

Pacing Command (0EH) - Each byte of returned data may be delayed by an interval determined by this command ( 0 to 255 ms in 1 -ms steps). This delay is initially zero until the Pacing command is sent (see note below).

Note: Pacing allows returned data to be read and processed by slower computers. However, set it as short as your computer will allow, to minimize the inconvenience of the delay. Sending all 1,863 bytes requires just under 5 seconds with zerolength delay selected, but over 5 minutes if the maximum delay is selected!

| Parameter | Bytes Returned | Data Returned | Comment |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{U}=00 \mathrm{H}$ | 1,863 | All Status Updata Data | See above Box <br> - Pacing Command |
| $\mathrm{U}=01 \mathrm{H}$ | 1 | Memory Channel No. | Current or Last Selected Memory |
| $U=02 \mathrm{H}$ | 16 | Current Operating Data (VFO or Memory) | See the Tables on page 91 and 92 for |
| $\mathrm{U}=03 \mathrm{H}$ | $\begin{gathered} 32 \\ (2 \times 16) \end{gathered}$ | Main VFO-A \& Sub VFO-B Data | 16-byte data record structures |
| $\mathrm{U}=04 \mathrm{H}^{*}$ | 16 | Memory Data |  |
| $\begin{gathered} X= \\ 00 \sim 71 \mathrm{H} \end{gathered}$ | NA | $\begin{aligned} & X=\text { Momory (1~99, P1~P5, Q1~Q5) } \\ & \times \text { only used when U }=04 \mathrm{H} \end{aligned}$ |  |

## Status Update Data Organization

An overview of the Status Update Data that can be returned to the PC in response to one of the Status Update requests (opcodes $\mathbf{1 0 H}, \mathrm{FAH}, \mathrm{F7H}$, or 0 EH ) is shown next page. The 1,863-byte block begins with six bytes, each containing one-bit state Status Flags (A), for a total of 48 bits, followed by one byte indicating the current (or last selected) Memory Channel (B), followed by $116 \times 16$-byte data records: one for the current Operating Data (C), one each for VFO-A (D) and VFO-B (E), and one for each of the 113 memories (F).

Of the four commands that cause Status Update to be returned, remember that only opcode 10 H (with its last argument set to zero) returns all of the data (see bottom left of this page).

## STATUS FLAGS (BYTES 1~6)

Each of the first six bytes are subdivided into 1-bit flag fields: if a bit is set (1), the function is enabled (on); and if reset ( 0 ), the function is disabled (off). These flags reflect the current states of various transceiver functions, most of which appear in the radio display as indicators or LEDs. The Status Flags command returns these bytes for use in the control program (you could replicate these indicators on the computer display, or else use them as control flags for routines, etc.). Bit offsets for all six bytes is shown on page 89.

## MEMORY CHANNEL DATA (BYTE 7)

The seventh Update Data Byte contains a binary value from $\mathbf{0 0} \sim \mathbf{7 0 H}$, corresponding to the current memory channel number on the display. Only this byte is returned by sending the Status Update command with the first parameter set to 1 . The chart on page 90 lists the corresponding hexadecimal codes for memory channels $01 \sim 99$, P1 ~P9, and QMB memories $1 \sim 5$.

## 16-BYTE DATA RECORDS (BYTES 8 ~ 1863)

The remainder of the operational data returned by the Status Update command consist of 16-byte data records, indicating VFO and memory-specific selections. The first of these records is for the current display, followed by the VFO-A, VFO-B, and then the 113 memory channels, from lowest to highest. Please review the table at the top left column on page 91, which outlines the structure of a 16 -byte data record. Each byte is identified by its offset from the start (base address) of the record. A further breakdown of each byte offset is also provided.

Note that this same 16 -byte data record format is used for the VFO and Memory Data as well, unless you are currently operating on a retuned memory ("M TUNE" displayed).

## Downloaded by RadioAmateur.EU

## CAT System Computer Control

## Status Update Data Organization

1863-Byte Status Updata Data (sent L-to-R)

| Status |
| :--- |
| Flags |


| Memory |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Channel No. | Operating <br> Data |  | VFO-A |  | VFO-B |  |
| Data | Data | Memory |  |  |  |  |
| 6 byte | 1 byte | 16 byte | 16 byte | 16 byte | 16 bytes $(\times 113$ memories $=1808$ bytes total) $)$ |  |
| $(\mathbf{A})$ | $(B)$ | $(\mathbf{C})$ | $(\mathbf{D})$ | $(\mathbf{E})$ | $(\mathbf{F})$ |  |

## 6-Byte Status Flags Record Table

| Bit <br> Offset | STATUS FLAG BYTE \#1 CONTENTS |
| :---: | :--- |
| 0 | Split Frequency Operation |
| 1 | Dual Receive Operation |
| 2 | Antenna Tuning In Progress |
| 3 | CaTT System Activated |
| 4 | SUB VFO-B In-Use (Rx/Tx LED on) |
| 5 | Keypad Entry In Progress |
| 6 | Main Receiver Muted |
| 7 | PTT Keyed (Tx Active) |


| Bit <br> Offset | STATUS FLAG BYTE \#4 CONTENTS |
| :---: | :--- |
| 0 | 2nd IF 455 kHz Filter Selection Active |
| 1 | 1st IF 8.2 MHz Filter Selection Active |
| 2 | N/A |
| 3 | N/A |
| 4 | PTT Keyed via CaTT Command |
| 5 | General Coverage TX Inhibit |
| 6 | Key Release Timer Active |
| 7 | Tx Inhibit |


| Bit <br> Offset | STATUS FLAG BYTE \#2 CONTENTS |
| :---: | :--- |
| 0 | 5-sec. MEM CHK Timer Active |
| 1 | Memory Checking In Progress |
| 2 | Dual VFO Tracking Active |
| 3 | Quick Memory Bank Selected |
| 4 | Memory Tuning Active |
| 5 | VFO Operation |
| 6 | Memory Operation |
| 7 | General Coverage Reception |


| Bit <br> Offset | STATUS FLAG BYTE \#5 CONTENTS |
| :---: | :--- |
| 0 | RTTY TX Idle |
| 1 | N/A |
| 2 | N/A |
| 3 | Grouped Memory MOde Active |
| 4 | ANT B Selected |
| 5 | RX ANT Selected |
| 6 | PMS Tuning Active |
| 7 | AM Synchronous Mode Active |


| Bit <br> Offset | STATUS FLAG BYTE \#3 CONTENTS |
| :---: | :--- |
| 0 | FAST Tuning Active |
| 1 | Antenna Tuner (ATU) In-Line |
| 2 | SUB VFO-B Locked |
| 3 | MAIN VFO-A Locked |
| 4 | Squelch Closed |
| 5 | Scan Direction (Up/Down) |
| 6 | Scan Paused |
| 7 | Auto Memory Write Scanning Active |


| Bit <br> Offset | STATUS FLAG BYTE \#6 CONTENTS |
| :---: | :--- |
| 0 | Sub Receiver Audio Muted |
| 1 | Main Receiver Audio Muted |
| 2 | Dual VFO Tracking |
| 3 | N/A |
| 4 | N/A |
| 5 | VFO Channel Stepping |
| 6 | Tuner Wait (while tuning) |
| 7 | AM Synchronous Mode Active |

## CAT System Computer Control

## Selecting Update Data to Download

As mentioned before, there are four opcodes that cause the MARK-V FT-1000MP to report (update) its operating status by downloading all or a portion of its 1,863 data bytes. These opcodes are shaded in the CATT Commands table (pages 94 ~ 97).

Status Update (Opcode 10H) - The 1st and 4th parameters of this command allow selecting different portions of Status data to be returned, as follows ("X" is the 1 st parameter, " U " is the 4th):

Read Flags (Opcode FAH) -This command can be set to retrieve all six Status Flag bytes, or else five bytes - three Status Flag Bytes, plus two transceiver ID bytes. The Status Flag Bytes are described on the preceding page, and in the Record Tables on the previous page.

The transceiver ID bytes are used in programs to distinguish the MARK-V FT-1000MP from other models, which have different, unique values returned in this situation. The constant values of $\mathbf{0 3 H}$ and 93 H are returned by the MARK-V FT-1000MP (and only the MARK-V FT-1000MP), as shown:

| Flag Byte | Flag Byte | Flag Byte | ID Byte 1 | ID Byte 2 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 2 | 3 | $(03 \mathrm{H})$ | $(93 \mathrm{H})$ |

Read Meter Data (Opcode F7H) - Sending this command returns a digitized meter deflection indication, between $\mathbf{0 0}$ and FFH (usually around FOH maximum). Four copies of this value are returned, along with one padding byte ( $\mathbf{F 7 H}$ ), as follows:

| Meter <br> Byte | Meter <br> Byte | Meter <br> Byte | Meter <br> Byte | F7H |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

During reception, the signal strength deflection is returned. During transmission, the parameter represented by the reading returned depends on the setting of the METER switch.

## 1-Byte Memory Channel Number Data Structure

This identifies the current or last-selected memory channel 1 ~ 99, P1 ~ P5 or QMB $1 \sim 5$ for operation. The table below translates hexadecimal codes into corresponding memory channel numbers. Please read the note in the box at the page bottom.

| Memory Channel Data (Hex Codes) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ch. | Hex | Ch. | Hex | Ch. | Hex | Ch. | Hex |
| 01 | 00H | 31 | 1EH | 61 | 3CH | 91 | 5AH |
| 02 | 01H | 32 | 1FH | 62 | 3DH | 92 | 5BH |
| 03 | 02H | 33 | 20H | 63 | 3EH | 93 | 5 CH |
| 04 | 03H | 34 | 21H | 64 | 3FH | 94 | 5DH |
| 05 | 04H | 35 | 22 H | 65 | 40 H | 95 | 5EH |
| 06 | 05H | 36 | 23H | 66 | 41H | 96 | 5FH |
| 07 | 06H | 37 | 24H | 67 | 42 H | 97 | 60H |
| 08 | 07H | 38 | 25H | 68 | 43H | 98 | 61H |
| 09 | 08H | 39 | 26H | 69 | 44H | 99 | 62H |
| 10 | 09H | 40 | 27H | 70 | 45H | P1 | 63H |
| 11 | OAH | 41 | 28H | 71 | 46 H | P2 | 64H |
| 12 | OBH | 42 | 29 H | 72 | 47H | P3 | 65 H |
| 13 | OCH | 43 | 2AH | 73 | 48H | P4 | 66H |
| 14 | ODH | 44 | 2BH | 74 | 49H | P5 | 67H |
| 15 | OEH | 45 | 2CH | 75 | 4AH | P6 | 68H |
| 16 | OFH | 46 | 2DH | 76 | 4BH | P7 | 69H |
| 17 | 10H | 47 | 2EH | 77 | 4CH | P8 | 6AH |
| 18 | 11H | 48 | 2FH | 78 | 4DH | P9 | 6BH |
| 19 | 12H | 49 | 30H | 79 | 4EH | Q1 | 6CH |
| 20 | 13H | 50 | 31H | 80 | 4FH | Q2 | 6DH |
| 21 | 14H | 51 | 32H | 81 | 50H | Q3 | 6EH |
| 22 | 15H | 52 | 33H | 82 | 51H | Q4 | 6FH |
| 23 | 16H | 53 | 34H | 83 | 52H | Q5 | 70 H |
| 24 | 17H | 54 | 35H | 84 | 53H |  |  |
| 25 | 18H | 55 | 36H | 85 | 54H |  |  |
| 26 | 19H | 56 | 37H | 86 | 55H |  |  |
| 27 | 1AH | 57 | 38H | 87 | 56H |  |  |
| 28 | 1BH | 58 | 39H | 88 | 57H |  |  |
| 29 | 1CH | 59 | ЗАН | 89 | 58 H |  |  |
| 30 | 1DH | 60 | 3BH | 90 | 59 H |  |  |

## Important Note!

The Hex Memory Channel Codes for returned memory data shown above (Byte 7) are different than those used in upload command data (opcodes)!
The memory channel hex codes used as argument (parameter) bytes for opcodes are offset by one (that is, one value greater) from their returned data counterparts. Therefore the channel hex codes used in opcodes $02 \mathrm{H}, \mathbf{0 3 H}$, and 0DH would range from $\mathbf{0 1 H} \sim 71 \mathrm{H}$.

When constructing command block bytes, ensure that the correct memory channel hex code is used!

## 16-Byte Data Record Structure

The following tables outline the 16-byte data record structure common to the Operating Data, VFO-A, VFO$B$ and Memory Data records. The table below shows assignments for each of the 16 -bytes in the Operating Data Record.

| Byte | 16-Byte Data Record Assignment |
| :---: | :--- |
| 0 | Band Selection |
| 1 |  |
| $y 2$ | Operating Frequency |
| 3 |  |
| 4 |  |
| 5 | Clarifier Offset |
| 6 |  |
| 7 | Operating Mode |
| 8 | IF Filter Offset |
| 9 | VFO/MEM Operating Flags |
| A~F | Not Used |

Band Selection - The $0.1 \sim 30 \mathrm{MHz}$ transceiver operating range is divided into 28 bands, represented in hexadecimal format in the table below. Data read in this record after downloading is in binary format, and must be converted to hexadecimal, then translated to the corresponding band.

| Hex <br> Code | Band | Hex <br> Code | Band |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 01 H | $0.1 \sim 0.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 0 FH | $10.5 \sim 12.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 02 H | $0.5 \sim 1.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 10 H | $12.0 \sim 14.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 03 H | $1.5 \sim 1.8 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 11 H | $14.0 \sim 14.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 04 H | $1.8 \sim 2.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 12 H | $14.5 \sim 15.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 05 H | $2.0 \sim 2.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 13 H | $15.0 \sim 18.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 06 H | $2.5 \sim 3.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 14 H | $18.0 \sim 18.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 07 H | $3.0 \sim 3.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 15 H | $18.5 \sim 21.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 08 H | $3.5 \sim 4.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 16 H | $21.0 \sim 21.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 09 H | $4.0 \sim 6.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 17 H | $21.5 \sim 22.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 0 AH | $6.5 \sim 7.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 18 H | $22.0 \sim 24.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 0 BH | $7.0 \sim 7.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 19 H | $24.5 \sim 25.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 0 CH | $7.5 \sim 8.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 1 AH | $25.0 \sim 28.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 0 DH | $8.0 \sim 10.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 1 BH | $28.0 \sim 29.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| 0 OHH | $10.0 \sim 10.5 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 1 CH | $29.0 \sim 30.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ |

The Band Selection data byte is divided into two 4bit fields, representing the first and second value of the band number hex code. The Bit 0 and Bit 1 of the first field are used as flags for the memory mask and scan skip feature. A bit value of " 1 " means enabled, and " 0 " for disabled. Each value of the hex code is entered into its respective field in 4-bit binary format. The table below outlines the Data Byte field, and show an example of how the $24.5 \sim 25.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ band would be read as:

| Band Selection Data Byte (0) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Bit 0* | Bit ${ }^{\text {** }}$ | Bit 2 | Bit 3 | Bit 4 | Bit 5 | Bit 6 | Bit 7 |
| Field 1 |  |  |  | Field 2 |  |  |  |
| 0* | 0** | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| $\begin{array}{\|l} * \text { *Mem } \\ \text { Mask } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} * * S c a n \\ \text { Skip } \end{gathered}$ | $0001=1$ |  | $1001=9$ |  |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { "0" }=\text { Off } \\ & \text { "1" }=\text { On } \end{aligned}$ |  | $19 \mathrm{H}=24.5 \sim 25.0 \mathrm{MHz}$ (refer to band chart) |  |  |  |  |  |

Operating Frequency - Likewise, the current operating frequency is similarly coded, this time into four bytes comprised of eight fields, from MSB to LSB. For example, a read binary value of 000000000000101 0010010000010000 is 14.250 .00 MHz as follows:

| Operating Frequency Data Bytes (1-4) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Byte 1 |  | Byte 2 |  | Byte 3 |  | Byte 4 |  |
| Field 1 MSB | Field 2 | Field 3 | Field 4 | Field 5 | Field 6 | Field 7 | $\begin{gathered} \text { Field } 8 \\ \text { LSB } \end{gathered}$ |
| O00000 | 010000 | 000100 | 01101 | 000110 | 01100 | 000011 | O1000 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 1 | 0 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 10's } \\ & \mathrm{Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 10’s } \\ & \text { Hz } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \text { 1's } \\ & \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 10 \text { 's } \\ & \text { kHz } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 100 ' \mathrm{~s} \\ & \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1's } \\ & \mathrm{MHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 10 ’ \mathrm{~s} \\ & \text { MHz } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 100's } \\ & \mathrm{MHz} \end{aligned}$ |
| $00052410=14.250 .00 \mathrm{MHz}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Clarifier Offset - Clarifier offset is written using 16bit binary data in two bytes. Negative offsets are expressed in binary 2 s -complement format, with a leading bit flag value* of "1." Although frequency resolution below 10 Hz cannot be viewed, absolute Clarifier offsets down to 0.625 Hz can be read from downloaded data.

Arithmetic conversion must be done on the binary value to arrive at the actual frequency offset (multiplying the 16 -bit binary offset by 0.625 ). For example, a binary value of 0011111001101111 (3E6FH or 15,983) multiplied by 0.625 results in an offset of +9989.375 Hz .

## CAT System Computer Control

## 16-Byte Data Record Structure

A value of 1100000110010001 (the 2-s complement of the previous example) produces a minus offset of -9989.375 Hz . See the byte chart below for a breakdown of the conversion process.

| Clarifier Offset Data Bytes (5-6) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Byte 5 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Byte 6 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1* | 1 | 0 0 | 0 | 0 |  | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| $\begin{gathered} 1^{*}(\text { flag ) } 100000110010001=4191 \mathrm{H}=16,785 \\ 16,785 \times 0.625=(-) 9989.375 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Note - Remember that the first bit is a flag: " 0 " for positive offsets, " 1 " for negative offsets, and is not included in calculations. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Operating Mode - The operating mode is expressed as a three-bit binary code in offsets $5 \sim 7$. Bit 0 contains a User Mode flag, while Bits 1~4 contain "dummy" values (unused).

| Operating Mode Byte (7) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Bit 0* | Bit 1 | Bit 2 | Bit 3 | Bit 4 | Bit 5 | Bit 6 | Bit 7 |
| User Mode | N/A - "dummy bytes |  |  |  | Mode Data (3-bit Code) |  |  |
| 0 | X | X | X | X | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0XXXX010 = CW operation, User Mode Off |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\left\{\begin{array}{l} 0=\text { off } \\ 1=\text { on } \end{array}\right.$ | Bits $1 \sim 3$ are "dummy bits" any $1 / 0$ combination may appear in here, but is insignificant. |  |  |  | LSB 000 <br> USB 001 <br> CW 010 <br> AM 011 <br> FM 100 <br> RTTY 101 <br> PKT 110 |  |  |

IF Filter Selection - The first data bit (Bit 0) contains a flag indicating normal or alternate reception mode (see table). The remainder of the data byte contains $2 \times 4$-bit fields separated by a dummy bit. The first field holds the 3-bit binary code for the 8.2 MHz 2nd IF filter selection, while the second holds the 455 kHz 3rd IF selection. Codes are listed in the bottom of the table below.

| IF Filter Selection Byte (8) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Bit 0* | Bit 1 | Bit2 | Bit 3 | Bit 4 | Bit 5 | Bit 6 | Bit 7 |
| $\begin{gathered} \mathrm{RX} \\ \text { Mode } \end{gathered}$ | 8.2 MHz 2nd IF |  |  |  | $\underline{455 \mathrm{kHz} 3 \mathrm{~d} \text { IF }}$ |  |  |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Thru } \\ & 2.4 \mathrm{k} \\ & 2.0 \mathrm{k} \\ & 500 \\ & 250 \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & 0001 \\ & 001 \\ & 010 \\ & 011 \\ & 101 \end{aligned}$ | X | $\begin{aligned} & 6.0 \mathrm{k} \\ & 2.4 \mathrm{k} \\ & 2.0 \mathrm{k} \\ & 500 \\ & 250 \end{aligned}$ |  | 000 |
|  |  |  | 001 |  |  |  |
|  |  |  | 010 |  |  |  |
|  |  |  | 011 |  |  |  |
|  |  |  | 100 |  |  |  |
| Mode* |  | CW |  | AM |  | RTTY |  | PKT |
| 0 |  |  |  | ENV |  | LSB |  | LSB |
| 1 |  |  |  |  |  | USB |  | FM |

VFO/MEM Indicators - Five flags indicate the status of Clarifier (Rx \& Tx), Repeater Offset (+/-), and Antenna Selection (A/B/RX). Bits 0 and 1 are not used (dummy values).

| IF Filter Selection Byte (8) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Bit 0* | Bit 1 | Bit 2 | Bit 3 | Bit 4 | Bit 5 | Bit 6 | Bit 7 |
| $X$ | $X$ | ANT <br> SELECT | - RPT | + RPT | RX <br> CLAR | TX <br> CLAR |  |
| Note: for all flag bits, $1=$ On, $0=$ Off <br> for ANT SELECT: <br> $00=$ ANT-A, 01 $=$ ANT-B, $10=$ RX ANT |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## Coding Examples

Although Yaesu Musen does not provide CATT control software (owing to the large variety of computers and operating systems used by our customers), the following are a few examples of critical CAT I/O functions, in Basic. Note that all variations of Basic may not support some of the commands, in which case alternate algorithms may need to be developed to duplicate the functions of those shown.

## Sending a Command

After "opening" the computer's serial port for 4800baud, 8 data bits and 2 stop bits with no parity, as I/O device \#2, any CATT command may be sent. However, if you determine that your computer may need extra time to process data returned from the transceiver, you should send the Pacing command first. Here is an example of the Pacing command setting a 2 -ms delay:

## PRINT \#2, <br> CHR\$(0);CHR\$(0);CHR\$(0);CHR\$(2);CHR\$(\&HE);

Notice that the instruction opcode is sent last, with the first (MSB) parameter sent just before it, and the LSB parameter (or dummies) sent first. This means that the parameters are sent in the reverse order from that in which they appear in the XAT Commands table. Also note that in this and the following examples, we are sending zeros as dummy bytes; this is not necessary, however. If you decide to send commands through a 5-byte array, the values of the dummy parameters need not be cleared. Also note the semicolon at the end of the line, to prevent Basic from sending extra bytes to "end the line" (the CNT system control system is based on binary streams, not text streams).

Using the same example as on page 87, the following command could be used to set the frequency of the display to 14.25000 MHz :

```
PRINT #2,
CHR$(&H00);CHR$(&H50);CHR$(&H42);CHR$(&H01);
CHR$(&HA);
```

Notice here that the BCD values can be sent just by preceding the decimal digits with " $\& \mathrm{H}$ " in this ex-
ample. However, in an actual program, it may be preferable to convert the decimal frequency variable in the program to an ASCII string, and then to convert the string to characters through a lookup table.

If you send a parameter that is out of range for the intended function, or not among the specified legal values for that function, the MARK-V FT-1000MP should do nothing. Therefore, you may wish to alternate your sending regular commands or command groups with the Read Flags or short-form Update commands, allowing the transceiver to let the computer know if everything sent so far has been accepted and acted upon as expected.

Bear in mind that some commands specify "binary," as opposed to BCD formatted parameters. You can send binary parameters without going through the character/hex string conversion process. For example, the CH parameter in the Command table is a binary value. You could have the MARK-V FT-1000MP recall memory channel 50 (decimal) by the following:
PRINT\#2,
CHR\$(0);CHR\$(0);CHR\$(0);CHR\$(49);CHR\$(2);
Note that we must send 49 to get channel 50, since the channel numbers in the command start from 0 , while those on the display start with 1.

## Reading Returned Data

The reading process is easily done through a loop, storing incoming data into an array, which can then be processed after the entire array has been read. To read the meter:
FOR l=1 TO 5
MDATA(I) = ASC(INPUT\$(1,\#2))
NEXT I
Recall from above that the meter data consists of four identical bytes, followed by a filler byte, so we really only need to see one byte to get all of the information this command offers. Nevertheless, we must read all five bytes (or 1, 16, or 1,863 , in the case of the Update data). After reading all of the data, we can select the bytes of interest to us from the array (MDATA, in the above example).

## CAT System Computer Control

Opcode Command Chart (1)

| Command <br> or Key | Parameter Bytes |  |  | Opcode | Parameter Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

Opcode Command Chart (2)

| Command or Key | Parameter Bytes |  |  |  | Opcode | Parameter Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1st | 2rd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |  |
| Electronic Keyer | K1 | K2 | K3 | K4 | 70H | Activates remote control and contest keyer functions. $\mathrm{K} 1=\mathbf{0 0 H} \text { (fixed value) }$ <br> K2 = keyer function: <br> $\mathbf{0 0 H}=$ Message 0 <br> $01 \mathrm{H}=$ Message 1 <br> $\mathbf{0 2 H}=$ Message 2 <br> 03H = Message 3 <br> 04H = CQ/ID Message <br> 05H = Contest Number <br> 06H = Decrement Contest Number <br> 07H $=$ Increment Contest Number <br> 08H = Message Playback m/o Tx <br> 09H = Write Message into Memory <br> $\mathrm{K} 3=\mathbf{0 1 H}$ (fixed value) <br> $\mathrm{K} 4=1 \mathrm{BH}$ (fixed value) |
| EDSP <br> Enhanced <br> Digital <br> Signal <br> Plocessing | - | - | P1 | P2 | 75H | EDSP Settings, where P 2 is: <br> RX EDSP OFF (30H), P1 = 00H <br> AM EDSP Demodulation On (31H), P1 = 00H <br> USB EDSP Demodulation (32H), <br> with audio response of $100 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 3.1 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=\mathbf{0 0 H})$ or <br> 300 Hz ~ $2.8 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=10 \mathrm{H})$ <br> LSB EDSP Demodulation (32H), <br> with audio response of $100 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 3.1 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=\mathbf{0 0 H})$ or <br> $300 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 2.8 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=10 \mathrm{H})$ <br> AF Filter Off (40H), P1 = 00H <br> AF LPF On $(41 \mathrm{H})$, <br> where P1 = [Fcutout(Hz)]/20 (HEX format) <br> AF HPF On (42H), <br> where P1 = [Fcutout(Hz)]/20 (HEX format) <br> CW 240 Hz BWF (45H), <br> where P1 = FCENTER (BCD format) <br> CW 120 Hz BWF (46H), <br> where P1 = FCENTER (BCD format) <br> CW 60 Hz BWF (47H), <br> where P1 = FCENTER (BCD format) <br> Data Mode AF Filter On (48H), where P1 = FSK (10H), SSTV (20H), Packet (30H), or FAX (40H) <br> Random Noise Filter ( $\mathbf{4 A H}$ ) Off/On ( $\mathrm{P} 1=\mathbf{0 0 H} / \mathbf{1 Y H}$ ) <br> Audio Notch Filter (4BH) Off/On (P1 = 00H/10H) <br> AF Equalization $(4 \mathrm{EH})$, where $\mathrm{P} 1=\mathrm{Off}(\mathbf{0 O H})$, <br> Bank $1(10 \mathrm{H})$, Bank $2(20 \mathrm{H})$, Bank $3(30 \mathrm{H})$, Bank $4(40 \mathrm{H})$ <br> TX EDSP Off (BOH) <br> USB EDSP Modulation (B2H), with audio response of: $100 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 3.1 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=10 \mathrm{H}), 50 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 3.1 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=20 \mathrm{H})$, $200 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 3.1 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=30 \mathrm{H}), 300 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 3.1 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=40 \mathrm{H})$ <br> LSB EDSP Modulation (B3H), with audio response of: $100 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 3.1 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=10 \mathrm{H}), 150 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 3.1 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=20 \mathrm{H})$, $200 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 3.1 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=30 \mathrm{H}), 300 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 3.1 \mathrm{kHz}(\mathrm{P} 1=40 \mathrm{H})$, <br> AF Equalization $(4 E H)$, where $\mathrm{P} 1=\mathrm{Off}(00 \mathrm{H})$, <br> Bank 1 (10H), Bank 2(20H), Bank 3 (30H), Bank $4(40 \mathrm{H})$ |

## CAT System Computer Control

Opcode Command Chart (3)

| Command or Key | Parameter Bytes |  |  |  | Opcode | Parameter Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1st | 2rd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |  |
| TUNER | - | - | - | T | 81H | Switch Antenna Tuner ON ( $\mathrm{T}=\mathbf{0 1 H}$ ) or OFF ( $\mathrm{T}=\mathbf{0 0 H}$ ) |
| Tuner Start | - | - | - | - | 82H | Start Antenna Tuning |
| Dual Operation | - | - | - | D | 83H | Switch Dual Receive ON ( $\mathrm{D}=01 \mathrm{H}$ ) or OFF ( $\mathrm{D}=00 \mathrm{H}$ ) |
| [RPT] | - | - | - | R | 84H | Switch Simplex Operation $(R=00 H)$, Minus Shift $(R=01 H)$, or Plus Shift ( $\mathrm{R}=\mathbf{0 2 H}$ ) for Repeater Operation |
| [A B] | - | - | - | - | 85H | Copy Data Display in VFO-A or VFO-B. |
| Set SUB VFO-B <br> Operating Freq. | F1 | F2 | F3 | F4 | 8AH | Enter new operating frequency in F1 ~ F4, in BCD format: see text for example. |
| BANDWIDTH <br> 2ud \& 3rd IF Filter Selection | X1 | - | - | X4 | 8CH | Select filter bandwidth for selected IF (see below): |
| MEM. Channel Scan Skip | - | - | S | X | 8DH | Tag memory channels 1 thruogh 99 ( $\mathrm{X}=\mathbf{0 1 H} \sim \mathbf{6 C H}$ ), to be skipped $(\mathrm{S}=\mathbf{0 1 H})$ or included $(\mathrm{S}=\mathbf{0 0 H})$ while scanning. |
| Step VFO-A UP/DOWN | - | - | - | T | 8EH | Step frequency of VFO-A UP ( $\mathrm{T}=\mathbf{0 0 H}$ ) or DOWN ( $\mathrm{T}=\mathbf{0 1 H}$ ) |
| CTCSS <br> Encoder Tone Frequency Select | E | E | E | E | 90H | Select one of 33 CTCSS subaudible tones where $\mathrm{E}=\mathbf{0 0 H} \sim \mathbf{2 0 H}$ |
| Read Meter \& Panel Controls | - | - | - | - | F7H | Instruct radio to return digitized indications of various meter level readings and front panel control settings (4 repeated bytes, and F7H) selected by: <br> $\mathrm{M}=\mathbf{0 0 H}$ Main S-Meter <br> $\mathrm{M}=87 \mathrm{H}$ TUN Meter <br> $\mathrm{M}=\mathbf{0 1 H}$ Sub S-Meter <br> M = FOH Shuttle Jog Dial <br> M = 80H PO Meter <br> M = F1H CW Pitch Setting <br> $\mathrm{M}=\mathbf{8 1} \mathrm{H}$ ALC Meter <br> M = F2H Remote Control A/D Level <br> $\mathrm{M}=83 \mathrm{H}$ IC Meter <br> M = F3H SHIFT Setting <br> $\mathrm{M}=\mathbf{8 4} \mathrm{H}$ VCC Meter <br> M = F4H WIDTH Setting <br> $\mathrm{M}=85 \mathrm{H}$ SWR Meter <br> M = F5H EDSP Contour Selection <br> $\mathrm{M}=\mathbf{8 6} \mathrm{H}$ MIC Meter <br> M = F6H EDSP NR Selection |
| Repeater Offset | X1 | X2 | X3 | X4 | F9H | Set offset for RPT shift, valid values are $0 \sim 500 \mathrm{kHz}$ in $1-\mathrm{kHz}$ step. Use BCD format for X2 ~ X4. <br> X 1 is 10 's \& 100's of Hz $\quad \mathrm{X} 2$ is 1's \& 10's of kHz <br> X 3 is must be $00 \mathrm{H}, 01 \mathrm{H}$, or 02 H X 4 is must be 00 H |

## CAT System Computer Control

## Opcode Command Chart (4)

| Command or Key | Parameter Bytes |  |  |  | Opcode | Parameter Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1st | 2rd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |  |
| Read Internal Status Flags | - | - | - | F | FAH | Instructs radio to return either five or six status flag bytes. <br> * See page 89 for explanation of transceiver ID byte values. |

## Introduction

In earlier chapters, basic and advanced operation were covered to explain the various transceiver features. This chapter covers all of the menu selections entries and their settings used by the transceiver. These functions were described previously, but must be configured as desired using menu programming. Menu selections are shown as they appear in the display to assist you as you go along.

## Menu Selections

Eighty-two transceiver settings are contained in programming menu (refer to the menu list shown on the opposite page).

- To enter the "Menu" mode, press and hold in [FAST], then press [ENT].
- The SUB VFO-B display will show the selection name, while the Main VFO display field shows the current setting for the selected menu item.
$\square$ Rotating the VRF/MEM CH knob displays the various menu selections, whose numbers appear in the memory channel box.
$\square$ Rotating the Main VFO knob, once you have selected a menu item, lets you choose between the various settings available for the displayed selection. Some settings are merely an off/on switch, while others are variable tuning step sizes, time and frequency values, or mode choices.


## Easy Recall Menu

Several menu selections can be accessed directly via two keystokes from the front panle:
[FAST] + [NB]
[FAST] + [NOTCH]
Menu 2-8 (nb)
[FAST] + [VCC/MIC]
[FAST] $+[$ BK-IN $]$
[FAST] + RX-(SUB VFO-B) Menu 8-7 (Sub-AGc)

## 0-1 GrP1-CH

Selects the number of default memory channels (from 1-99) available within Memory Group 1. If all 99 memory channels are enabled, Memory Group 2 is not configurable.

## 0-2 GrP2-CH

Selects the number of memory channels (from 1 99) available within Memory Group 2 (if less than 99 memory channels are enabled in Memory Group 1). If all 99 memory channels are enabled, Memory Group 3 is not configurable.

## 0-3 GrP3-cH

Selects the number of memory channels available within Memory Group 3 (if Groups 1 and 2 are not configured for 99 channels total). If all 99 memory channels are enabled, Memory Group 4 is not configurable.

## 0-4 GrP4-CH

Selects the number of memory channels available within Memory Group 4 if Groups 1, 2, and 3 are not configured for 99 channels total. If all 99 memory channels are enabled, Memory Group 5 is not configurable.

## 0-5 GrP5-CH

Selects the number of memory channels available within memory Group 5 (to 99 total) if Groups 1, 2, 3, and 4 are not configured for 99 channels total.

## $0-6$ quick-cH

Quick Memory Bank Channels - Allocates 1 to 5 memories for use with the instant-write "quick-memory" feature.

## 0-7 (Not Used)



## Menu Selection and Settings

## 0-8 Auto-uP

Auto Channel Up - When programming memories from the VFO, this feature automatically increments selection to the next higher memory channel. This allows programming sequential memories more easily (you don't have to manually select the next memory to be written). This also prevents inadvertently overwriting stored memories.

## 0-9 EdSP

EDSP on/off - Enables/Disables the EDSP feature. This parameter should always be set to "On" unless you have a compelling reason not to use the EDSP system.

## $1-0$ diAL-SPd

VFO A \& B Dial FAST Tuning Rate - Selects x2 or $x 4$ tuning when the [FAST] button is pressed.

## 1-1 SJ -SPEEd

Shuttle Jog Encoder Speed - Selects the encoder pulse duration from $1 \sim 100 \mathrm{msec}$ (in 1 msec steps).

## 1-2 SFt-StEP

IF SHIFT/WIDTH Control Tuning Step Size - Selects 10 or $20-\mathrm{Hz}$ step size. Total knob tuning range is 62 encoder steps (with $20-\mathrm{Hz}$ step size the shift range is double that with $10-\mathrm{Hz}$ ).

## 1-3 A-StEP

MAIN VFO-A Tuning Step Size - Selects 0.625 Hz , $1.25 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 10 \mathrm{~Hz}$, or 20 Hz tuning steps.

## 14 b-StEP

SUB VFO-B Tuning Step Size - Selects 0.625 Hz , $1.25 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 10 \mathrm{~Hz}$, or 20 Hz tuning steps.

## 1-5 cH-StEP

VFO Channel Step Size - For the Channel Stepping feature, step size can be selected from $1 \sim 100$ kHz (in $1-\mathrm{kHz}$ increments).

## 1-6 q-SPLit

Quick Split Offset Tuning - Select a tuning offset of up to $\pm 100 \mathrm{kHz}$ (in $1-\mathrm{kHz}$ steps). See menu selection 8-2: Split mode, $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}$.

## 1-7 AutoFASt

Automatic Selecting of AGC recovery time When the front panel AGC selector is set to the "AUTO" position and this feature is "ON," the AGC decay time automatically is set to "FAST" during the following operating situations:

O During scanning;
O In 250/500 Hz bandwidth; and
O When you turn the VFO Knob for more than $1 / 2$ second.

## $1-8$ cLAr-tun

Clarifier Tuning Offset - Enables/disables the offset tuning meter above the Main VFO frequency display. As the [CLAR] control is rotated and the TX or RX frequency is offset, a single meter segment shifts to show your relative offset from the original frequency.

## 1-9 cLAr-StP

Clarifier Tuning Step Size - Selects $0.625 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1.25$ $\mathrm{Hz}, 2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 10 \mathrm{~Hz}$, or 20 Hz tuning steps used with the RX and TX CLAR control.

## 2-0 Scn-PAuS

Scan Pause - Enables/disables pausing on activity while scanning.

## 2-1 Scn rES

Scan Resume Mode - Selects one of three scanstop modes:

Carrier Stop - Scanning pauses on activity, resumes when signal disappears.
Carrier Timed Stop - Scanning pauses on activity for 5 seconds then resumes scanning for the next station (whether signal remains or not).
Carrier Timed Slow - Scanning slows down for 5 seconds after detecting activity, then resumes to normal scan rate.

## 2-2 (Not Used)

## 2-3 nScn-SPd

Memory Scan Speed - This sets the scan dwell time, which is the time duration that the scanner samples each memory channel. This duration can be set from $100 \sim 1000 \mathrm{msec}$, in 10 msec steps.

## 2-4 dScn-SPd

Dial (VFO) Scan Speed - This sets the dwell time that the scanner samples each VFO channel. This duration can be set from $1 \sim 100 \mathrm{msec}$, in 1 msec steps.

## Menu Selection and Settings

## 2-5 Auto-in

Auto Memory Write - When enabled, active channels found during scanning are automatically written into ascending memory channels of Group 1, or all groups, until full.

## 2-6 ScAn-ALL

Memory Scan Skip - Enables/disables the memory scan skip feature. When OFF, memories marked for scan skip will be passed over during scanning. When ON , all memories are scanned.

## 2-7 Sc-dL-ti

Scan Delay Time - Selects a scanning delay time of $1 \sim 5$ seconds. This determines how long scanning pauses on activity before resuming.

## $2-8 \mathrm{nb}$

Noise Blanker - Selects the IF Noise Blanker Type and its blanking level. Set this menu to "A1" ~ "A15" to activate the narrow pulse blanker, or "B1" ~ "B15" to activate the wide pulse blanker. Higher settings allow weaker noise sources to be blanked more effectively. Short-cut: Press \& hold [FAST] \& press [NB].

## 2-9 notcH

Notch Operation - Selects Notch Filter operation: IF NOTCH - Manual IF notch operation using the front panel knob with the same name. The EDSP notch is not accessible in this mode.

Auto DSP - When the EDSP is engaged (menu selection $0-9$ is set to "on"), the [NOTCH] button serves as an On/Off switch for the EDSP auto-notch filter. The EDSP notch filter automatically locates existing heterodynes and notches them out. Any additional heterodynes are also notched as they appear. The IF Notch is accessible only when the EDSP is turned off (menu selection 0-9 is set to "off").
Select - If EDSP is engaged (menu selection 0-9 is set to "on"), and the [NOTCH] button is pressed, both the EDSP Auto-Notch and IF notch operation take effect simultaneously. With EDSP disabled (menu selection 0-9 is set to "off"), the manual IF notch is still available (by pressing the [NOTCH] key).
Short-cut: Press \& hold [FAST] \& press [NOTCH].

## 3-0 F-diSPLY

Frequency Display Format
Carrier-Displays the actual carrier frequency, without any offset added. When changing modes, the frequency display remains constant.

Offset - When changing modes, the frequency display changes to reflect the added BFO offset.

## 3-1 diSP-rES

Display Resolution - Selects $10 \mathrm{~Hz}, 100 \mathrm{~Hz}$, or 1 kHz display frequency resolution for the Main- and SubVFO displays. Note that this setting does not affect tuning step size.

## 3-2 EtS-SEL

Expanded Tuning Scale - Selects the display format of the expanded tuning scale located above the main frequency display:

Dial - Permits sub-resolution tuning and display using small sub-increment segments that expand outward as the dial is turned.

Clarifier - Permits viewing relative Rx or Tx Clarifier offset from the displayed frequency. A single segment moves left or right from center as the CLAR knob is rotated.

## 3-3 tr-diSP

Transverter Display - Selects 50, 144, or 430 to be displayed in the 1's, 10's, and 100's of the MHz places, for operation with a transverter.

## 3-4 briGHt

LCD Display Brightness - Enables adjustment of the display intensity between High or Low.

## 3-5 PnL-diSP

Panel Offset Display Mode - Selects one of four parameters to be viewed in the smaller sub-display to the right of the Main VFO frequency display:

Clarifier - Displays "clarified" frequency offset $\Delta \mathrm{Frx}$ or $\Delta \mathrm{Ftx}$ from original frequency.
Channel Freq. - Displays the operating frequency contained in the selected memory channel.

Offset- Displays the frequency difference (offset) between the displayed Main VFO and Sub VFO frequencies.

A1 (CW) Pitch - Displays the current CW pitch setting.
Note: When the Clarifier is switched on during operation, it will over-ride any setting of the Panel SubDisplay which may be different from "Clarifier."

## 3-6 S-bArdSP

Sub-Meter Bar Graph - Enables the S-meter bargraph segment display for the Sub VFO.

## 3-7 P-HoLd

Main Meter Peak-Hold - Enables/disables the peak-hold feature, and selects the display's bar/segment persistence (delay time) from 10 ~ 2000 msec .

# Menu Selection and Settings 

## $3-8$ SP-HoLd

Sub Meter Peak Hold - Enables/disables the peakhold feature for the Sub-VFO meter, and selects the display bar/segment persistence (delay time) from 10 ~ 2000 msec .

## 3-9 (Not Used)

## 4-0 rF out

RF Power Output Range - Selects a maximum RF power output limit of $200 \mathrm{~W}, 75 \mathrm{~W}$, or 10 W .

## 4-1 bEEP

Key \& Panel Beeper - Enables/disables the beep that sounds when a front panel key or button is pressed.

## 4-2 bEEP-F

Beep Frequency - Adjusts the front panel key \& button beep pitch from $220 \sim 7040 \mathrm{~Hz}$. By turning the SUB VFO-B knob slightly so that "bEEP-tun" appears, a constant pitch matches the displayed pitch, which is adjusted using the MAIN VFO-A knob. This can be useful for making adjustments requiring an audio reference tone.

Note - beep volume can be adjusted via the hole on the bottom case of the transceiver. Insert a small insulated screwdriver and slowly turn the trimmer for the desired volume.

## 4-3 tun-drv

Tune-up Drive Power - Selects a maximum output power limit of 10,75 , or 200 W for driving the input circuit of an external linear RF amplifier while tuning (while using the Remote Control function).

## 4-4 tr-EdSP

Transmit Audio EDSP - Disables or selects one of four available EDSP equalization techniques for transmitted microphone audio. This allows you to select an audio response which best matches your voice, allowing the transmitter's available power to be focused must effectively, thereby maximizing the useful power output from the MARK-V FT-1000MP.

The available selections are:
OFF: This function is disabled.
1: Mid- and high-frequency components are enhanced with this setting.
2: A high-emphasis response is produced, ideal for pile-up or contest work.
3: Both low- and high-frequency components are emphasized.
4: A wide bandpass response is produced, emulating a "broadcast" microphone audio sound.

## 4-5 (not Used)

## 4-6 dvS-rEc

DVS Record VFO - Selects the Main receiver or the Sub receiver as the receive audio source to record from, when using the optional DVS-2 (Digital Voice System).

## 4-7 dvS-Ptt

DVS-2 PTT - Enables/disables transmitter PTT control from the DVS-2 unit.

## 4-8 HEAdPHon

Headphone Mode - Selects one of three audio mixing modes for use with headphones:

Mono - Audio from both the Main and Sub receivers is combined and heard equally in both ears.

Stereo 1 - Audio from both the Main and Sub receivers can be heard in each ear, but SUB VFO audio is attenuated in the left ear and MAIN VFO audio is attenuated in the right.
Stereo 2-Audio from MAIN VFO-A is heard only in the left ear and SUB VFO-B in the right.
Note: Both VFOs must be activated by the [DUAL] button on the front panel, and the main and sub audio must be balanced using the AF GAIN and SUB AF controls, to experience this feature.

## 4-9 AF GAin

AF GAIN Control - Provides setup of the AF GAIN and SUB AF front panel controls:

Balance - The audio level for both VFOs is adjusted by the AF GAIN control, while the SUB AF control adjusts the balance.

Separate - The audio level for each VFO is adjusted separately (AF GAIN control for Main receiver's volume, SUB AF control for Sub receiver's volume).

## 5-0 SSb nor

SSB Normal Filters - Selects the SSB filters used when the front-panel [NOR] switch is selected (while in the SSB mode).
8.2 - Sets the 2nd IF filter to "through," and the 3rd IF filter to " 2.4 kHz ."

455 - Sets the 2nd IF filter to " 2.4 kHz ," and the 3rd IF filter to " 6.0 kHz ."
8.2-455-Sets the 2nd IF filter to "through," and 3rd IF filter to " 6.0 kHz ."
oFF - Sets the 2nd IF filter and 3rd IF filter to " 2.4 kHz."

## 5-1 8.2-2.0

2nd IF 2.0 kHz Filter - Enables/disables the optional 2.0 kHz IF filter (Yaesu P/N YF-114SN).

## Menu Selection and Settings

## 5-2 CW nor

CW Normal Filters - Selects the CW filters used when the front-panel [NOR] switch is selected (while in the CW mode).
8.2-Sets the 2nd IF to the optional 2.0 kHz filter, and the 3rd IF to the 2.4 kHz filter.
455 - Sets the 2nd IF to the 2.4 kHz filter, and the 3rd IF to the optional 2.0 kHz filter.
8.2-455 - Sets the 2nd IF and 3rd IF filters to 2.0 kHz filter options.

Note: If you have not installed the optional 2.0 kHz filters (or if you disable the optional 2.0 kHz filters by menu selection 5-1 and/or 5-5), the received signal will pass through the standard 2.4 kHz filter.

## 5-3 8.2-250

2nd IF 250 Hz Filter - Enables/disables the optional 250 Hz IF filter (Yaesu P/N YF-114CN).

## 5-4 dAtAnAr2

DATA Narrow 2 Filters - Selects the filters used when the front-panel [NAR2] switch is selected (while in the DATA mode).
8.2 - Sets the 2nd IF to the optional 250 Hz filter, and the 3rd IF to the optional 500 Hz filter.

455 - Sets the 2nd IF to the 500 Hz filter, and the 3rd IF to the optional 250 Hz filter.
8.2-455-Set the 2nd IF and 3rd IF filters to the 250 Hz filter options.
Note (1): If you have not installed the optional 2nd IF 500 Hz filter (or if you disable the filter by menu selections 5-3), the received signal will pass through the supplied 500 Hz filter.

Note (2): If you have not installed the optional 3rd IF 500 Hz filter (or if you disable the filter by menu selections 5-6), the received signal will pass through the supplied 2.4 kHz filter.

Note (3): If you have not installed the optional 3rd IF 250 Hz filter (or if you disable the filter by menu selections 5-7), the received signal will pass through the supplied 2.4 kHz (or optional 500 Hz ) filter.

## 5-5 455-2.0

3rd IF 2.0 kHz Filter - Enables/disables the optional 2.0 kHz IF filter (Yaesu P/N YF-110SN).

## 5-6 455-500

3rd IF 500 Hz Filter - Enables/disables the optional 500 Hz IF filter (Collins YF-115C).

## 5-7 455-250

3rd IF 250 Hz Filter - Enables/disables the optional 250 Hz IF filter (Yaesu P/N YF-110CN).

## 5-8 Sub-FiL

SUB VFO Filter - Enables/disables optional SUB VFO-B 2nd IF $500-\mathrm{Hz}$ CW filter (Collins YF-115C).

## 5-9 t-FiL

TX EDSP Filter - Selects either a $6.0-\mathrm{kHz}$ or $2.4-$ kHz digital bandpass filter for early-stage transmit audio tailoring.

## 6-0 rttY-SHF

RTTY Frequency Shift - Selects 170, 425, or 850 Hz standard frequency shift for FSK RTTY operation.

Important Note! - If changing RTTY shift to other than 170 Hz , be sure to re-calibrate the tuning meter as outlined on page 85 . The calibration routine is simple, and ensures your center tuning indication matches the tone pair.

## 6-1 rttY-PoL

RTTY Polarity - Selects normal or reverse Mark/ Space polarity for RTTY operation. Normal operation utilizes a $2125-\mathrm{Hz}$ mark frequency, while reverse uses 2295 Hz . See the table on page 17 for a list of standard tone pairs.

## 6-2 rttY-ton

RTTY Tone - Selects high or low mark tone for RTTY operation. See the table on page 17 for a comparison of high/low tone pairs.

## 6-3 rtYFdSP

RTTY Frequency Display - Selects the type of display offset that appears during RTTY operation.

Offset- Displays the RTTY BFO offset.
Carrier - Displays the actual carrier frequency.

## 6-4 PAc-FdSP

Packet Frequency Display Offset - You can offset the frequency readout to display the center frequency between the two transmitted carriers (tone pairs). Rotate the MAIN VFO-A knob to adjust the display offset, or else set to 0.00 to display the actual carrier frequency. See menu selection 6 - 5 below for tone pair selection.

# Menu Selection and Settings 

## 6-5 PAc-tonE

Packet Tones - Selects one of four available packet tone pairs ( $1070 / 1270 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1600 / 1800 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2025 / 2125 \mathrm{~Hz}$ or $2110 / 2130 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ). The frequency displayed is actually the center frequency of the selected tone pair. See the table on page 15.

Important Note! - If changing the packet tone pair to other than $2025 / 2225 \mathrm{~Hz}$, be sure to re-calibrate the tuning meter as outlined on page 85. The calibration routine is simple, and ensures your center tuning indication matches the tone pair.

## 6-6 (Not Used)

## 6-7 ctcSS

CTCSS Repeater Tone - Selects one of 33 CTCSS (Continuous Tone Coded Squelch System) tones to be transmitted to access repeaters that require them. By default, 88.5 Hz is enabled.

## 6-8 tonE SEt

Repeater Tone Setting - Selects continuous (CTCSS) tone or burst tone mode for FM repeater operation.

## 6-9 rPt-SHFt

Repeater Shift - Selects the desired TX frequency offset (shift) from the displayed Rx frequency to access repeaters. Standard shift is 100 kHz for $29-\mathrm{MHz}$ FM repeaters.

## 7.0 kEYEr

Keyer Mode Selection - Selects the desired keyer emulation mode for the built-in electronic keyer:

IAMBIC 1 - lambic keyer with ACS (Automatic Character Spacing) disabled. Weighting is user-selectable via menu selections 7-1 and 7-2.

BUG - Mechanical "bug" keyer emulation. One paddle produces "dits" automatically, while the other paddle manually produces "dahs."
IAMBIC 2 - lambic keyer with ACS enabled. Weighting is set via menu selections 7-1 and 7-2.

## 7-1 kYr-dot

CW "Dot" Weighting - Adjusts dot character weight from $1 \sim 127$ ( 10 by default, the same size as a "space" within a letter).

## 7-2 kYr -dSH

CW "Dash" Weighting - Adjusts dash character weight from $1 \sim 127$ ( 30 by default, three times the length of a dot).

## 7-3 cntSt-no

Contest Keyer ID - Enters the initial 4-digit number that will increment/decrement after sending during contest QSOs.

## 7-4 bk-in ti

Break-In Time Delay - Selects the time delay from $0 \sim 30 \mathrm{~ms}$ ( 5 ms default) between when the PTT is keyed and the carrier is transmitted during QSK operation.

## 7-5 kYr-dLY

Keyer Delay - Selects the time delay from 0.00 ~ 5.10 seconds ( 0.00 secs. by default) during which the transmitter remains keyed after you stop sending. Short-cut: Press \& hold [FAST] \& press [BK-IN].

## 7-6 A1-StYLE

CW Playback Style (for Contest Number) - Determines the "Cut" number format playback for the CW Contest Number (see menu selection 7-3). The selected number will be played back in "Cut" format (see the chart on page 77).

## 7-7 dSP-ndn

EDSP Enhanced Modulation \& Demodulation This processes received and transmitted audio at the 4th IF level ( 10.24 kHz ) for enhanced band pass filtering and audio response tailoring. If any setting except "OFF" is selected, the EDSP Modulator or Demodulator will be engaged, bypassing the analog modulator or demodulator.

Four individual EDSP modes are selected with the SUB VFO-B dial, while frequency response choices are adjusted using the MAIN VFO-A dial:

SSB (Rx)-Selects $100 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz}$, or $300 \sim 2800 \mathrm{~Hz}$ filter response, or OFF.
SSB (Tx) - Selects $100 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz}, 150 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz}$, $200 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz}$, or $300 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz}$ filter response, or OFF.
CW (Rx) - Selects $100 \sim 3100 \mathrm{~Hz}$ filter response, or OFF.
AM (Rx) - Selects $70 \sim 3800 \mathrm{~Hz}$ filter response, or OFF.

## 7-8 Sub-rcur

Sub VFO Receiver - Enables or disables the SUB VFO-B receiver from operation. If disabled, you can temporarily turn on the Sub receiver by pressing [DUAL], or the SUB VFO-B RX button/LED.

## Menu Selection and Settings

## 7-9 rc-Func

Remote Control Function - Selects the active feature for remote control operation.

Note - Remote control operation requires a FH-1 Remote Control Keypad for operation; see the description and charts on pages $76 \sim 79$ for details of operation.

Kever - Activates the contest keyer operation.
Function Keys - Emulate front panel Memory Control keys.

VFO-A - Enables direct-frequency input to VFO-A by emulating the front panel keypad keys.

VFO-B - Enables direct-frequency input to VFO-B by emulating the front panel keypad keys.

If you wish to exercise remote control of the VL1000 Linear Amplifier from the MARK-V FT-1000MP, this menu must be set to "Keyer."

## 8-0 FASt-SEt

FAST Button Operation - Selects front-panel [FAST] button actuation:

Momentary - Press and hold to engage fast tuning. Continuous - Toggle on/toggle off fast tuning.

## 8-1 Lock-SEL

LOCK Button Operation - Sets up the panel "Lock" mode:

Dial - Locks MAIN VFO-A knob only.
Panel - Locks front panel buttons \& keys (refer to drawing below).

Primary - locks front panel primary function keys (refer to drawing below).

## 8-2 SPLt-SEt

Split Mode Operation - Select one of three split operating modes:

Normal - In this mode, pressing SUB VFO-B (TX) Switch-LED activates SUB VFO-B for transmission. Other settings (such as mode and frequency) must be manually set for the Sub VFO.
Auto - When the SUB VFO-B (TX) Switch/LED is pressed, SUB VFO-B is enabled for transmit, and the selected operating mode from MAIN VFO-A is automatically copied into SUB VFO-B.
$\underline{A=B}$ - Same as Auto mode above; however, a preset frequency offset is applied to SUB VFO-B for transmission (see menu selection 1-6: Quick Split).

## 8-3 PA-cnt

Power Amplifier - Enable/Disable the Power Amplifier. When you are using a transverter, select this menu to "PA off."

## 8-4 FrontEnd

Receiver Front-End RF Amplifier - Selects the desired receiver front-end amplifier configuration:

Flat - A broadband amplifier with flat response.
Tuned - A separate tuned amplifier for the low and high bands.

## 8-5 Ant-SEL

Antenna Selection - Sets up the rear-panel antenna jack switching:

AUTO - Antenna selections are automatically copied along with other operating parameters during memory programming.
$\underline{O N}$ - Enables the front panel [ANT] switch.
OFF - Disables the front panel [ANT] switch (only ANT-A is therefore available).


## Primary Lock

When the Main VFO (A) [LOCK] button is pressed, only the MAIN VFO Tuning knob.
When the Sub VFO (B) [LOCK] button is pressed, all controls within the shaded area.
MARK-V FT-1000MP Operating Manual

When the Main VFO (A) [LOCK] button is pressed, all controls within the shaded area (except VRF and IDBT switches).
When the Sub VFO (B) [LOCK] button is pressed, only the SUB VFO Tuning knob.

## 8-6 uSEr-SEt

User Setting - This configures an operating "environment" selected by pressing and holding in the frontpanel [PKT] button. Operating parameters are selected using the Sub VFO knob, while the options are chosen with the Main VFO knob.

Mode - This selects to which mode the custom settings are applied. Choose LSB, USB, CW (normal/ reverse), RTTY (normal/reverse), or packet (LSB only).
Display Offset - You can choose a custom offset $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ (in $5-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps) to take effect when the "USER" mode is activated. The default offset is dependent upon operating mode.
RX PLL Offset - You can offset the receiver PLL frequency $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ (in $5-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps) when the "USER" mode is activated.
$\underline{R x}$ Carrier - This is used to adjust the receive carrier injection frequency between $450 \sim 460 \mathrm{kHz}$. The default injection frequency is dependent upon operating mode.

Tx PLL Offset- You can offset the transmitter PLL frequency $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ (in $5-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps) when the "USER" mode is activated.
TX Carrier - This is used to adjust the transmit carrier injection frequency between $450.000 \sim 453.700$ kHz or $456.300 \sim 460.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ (PKT), 456.300 ~ 460.000 kHz (LSB), $450.000 \sim 453.700 \mathrm{kHz}$ (USB), or between $450.000 \sim 460.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ (all others). The default injection frequency is dependent upon the operating mode.
RTTY Offset (shift) - For operators who desire to use a non-standard mark/space shift (that is, other than $170 / 425 / 850 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), a custom shift ( $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ in $5-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps) can be chosen. The mark is the carrier frequency, while the space is offset above or below the carrier by the value of this setting. For best results, we recommend limiting shift to $\pm 1.000$ kHz or less.

Easy Set - If you enjoy operating FAX, SSTV, or PSK-31, you can select on of these for the User mode. The carrier and offset options for both settings come factory pre-configured and optimized for best operation.

## 8-7 Sub-AGc

SUB VFO Receiver AGC - Selects automatic, slow, or fast AGC recovery time for the Sub receiver.

## 8 8-8 tunEr

Antenna Tuner - Enables or disables the internal automatic antenna tuner unit for operation.

## 8-9 cAr oFSt

Carrier Point Offset - This allows shifting the carrier point (IF passband) on both Tx and Rx to tailor the received audio response, as well as your transmitted voice audio. This can be used to customize your signal for your own voice characteristics. Seven individual carrier settings are selected with the Sub VFO dial, while offsets are adjusted (in $10-\mathrm{Hz}$ steps) using the Main VFO dial:

Rx LSB Carrier - Adjusts the receiver carrier point for LSB throughout the range of $-200 \sim+500 \mathrm{~Hz}$.
TX LSB Carrier- Adjusts the transmitter carrier point for LSB throughout the range of $-200 \sim+500 \mathrm{~Hz}$.
Processor LSB - Adjusts the speech processor carrier point for LSB throughout the range of -200 ~ +500 Hz .

Rx USB Carrier - Adjusts the receiver carrier point for USB throughout the range of $-200 \sim+500 \mathrm{~Hz}$.

TX USB Carrier - Adjusts the transmitter carrier point for USB throughout the range of $-200 \sim+500 \mathrm{~Hz}$.

Processor USB - Adjusts the speech processor carrier point for USB throughout the range of -200 $\sim+500 \mathrm{~Hz}$.
TX AM Carrier - Adjusts the transmitter carrier point for AM throughout the range of $\pm 3000 \mathrm{~Hz}$.
Note: See the table on the next page for a complete list of filter offsets according to mode, and custom frequency and display offsets.

## Custom Frequency \& Display Offset Information (1)

| MODE |  | 1st Fc = F + 70.455 BFO (kHz) |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | RX | RX | TX | RX | TX |
| SSB | $\begin{aligned} & \text { LSB } \\ & \text { USB } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & -1500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +1500 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & -1500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +1500 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 465.5 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 453.5 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 465.5 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 453.5 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ |  |
| CW | $\begin{aligned} & 400 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 600 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 700 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 800 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 454.6 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 454.5 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 454.4 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 454.3 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 454.2 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ |  |
| CW-R | $\begin{aligned} & 400 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 600 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 700 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 800 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 454.4 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 454.5 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 454.6 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 454.7 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 454.8 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ |  |
| AM | Synchronouse | 0 | 0 | - | $\begin{aligned} & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.0 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ |  |
| FM | Narrow | 0 | 0 | - | - |  |
| RTTY-L | H 170 Hz H 425 Hz H 850 Hz L 170 Hz L 425 Hz L 850 Hz | $-85.00 \mathrm{~Hz}$ <br> -212.5 Hz <br> $-425.0 \mathrm{~Hz}$ <br> $-850.0 \mathrm{~Hz}$ <br> $-212.5 \mathrm{~Hz}$ <br> $-425.0 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $\begin{aligned} & -85.00 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & -212.5 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & -425.0 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & -850.0 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & -212.5 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & -425.0 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | 457.2100 kHz 457.3375 KHz 457.5500 kHz 456.3600 kHz 456.4875 kHz 456.7000 kHz | Mark 455.0850 kHz 455.2125 KHz 455.4250 kHz 455.0850 kHz 455.2125 kHz 455.4250 kHz | Space 455.9150 kHz 454.7875 KHz 454.5750 kHz 455.9150 kHz 454.7875 KHz 454.5750 kHz |
| RTTY-U | H 170 Hz H 425 Hz H 850 Hz L 170 Hz L 425 Hz L 850 Hz | $\begin{aligned} & +85.00 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +212.5 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +425.0 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +850.0 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +212.5 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +425.0 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & +85.00 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +212.5 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +425.0 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +850.0 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +212.5 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +425.0 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | 452.7900 kHz 452.6625 kHz 452.4500 kHz 453.6400 kHz 453.5125 kHz 455.4250 kHz | $\begin{aligned} & 455.0850 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.2125 \mathrm{KHz} \\ & 455.4250 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.0850 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.2125 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.4250 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 455.9150 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 454.7875 \mathrm{KHz} \\ & 454.5750 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 455.9150 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 454.7875 \mathrm{KHz} \\ & 454.5750 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ |
| PKT-L PKT-F | $\begin{aligned} & 1170 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 1700 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} -330 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 456.170 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 456.700 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 457.125 \mathrm{kHz} \\ & 457.210 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ |  | 50 kHz <br> 700 kHz <br> 5 kHz <br> 0 kHz |
| USER |  | $\pm 5000$ | $\pm 5000$ | $450 \sim 460 \mathrm{kHz}$ | 450 ~ 4 | 60 kHz |

Custom Frequency \& Display Offset Information (2)

| SELECTED FILTER OFFSETS ACCORDING TO MODE |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MODE |  | SELECTED FILTER BANDWIDTH |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | 6 kHz | 2.8 kHz | 2.4 kHz | 2.0 kHz | 500 Hz | 250 Hz |
| SSB | $\begin{aligned} & \text { LSB } \\ & \text { USB } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & -50 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & -50 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & -150 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & -150 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & -500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & -500 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & -500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & -500 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ |
| CW CW-R | $\begin{aligned} & 400 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 600 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 700 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 800 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 400 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 600 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 700 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 800 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & +2600 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +2500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +2400 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +2300 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +2200 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +2600 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +2500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +2400 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +2300 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +2200 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{r} +1150 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +1050 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +950 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +850 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +750 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +1150 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +1050 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +950 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +850 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +750 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & +950 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +850 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +750 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +650 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +550 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +450 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +350 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +250 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +650 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +550 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & +650 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +550 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +450 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +350 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +250 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +650 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +550 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +450 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +350 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +250 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ |
| AM | Synchronous | $\pm 2800 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $\pm 1200 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $\pm 1000 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $\pm 800 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $\pm 150 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $\pm 70 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |
| FM | Narrow | 0 | - | - | - | - | - |
| RTTY-L | H 170 Hz H 425 Hz H 850 Hz L 170 Hz L 425 Hz L 850 Hz | $\begin{aligned} & +800 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +600 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +450 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +1640 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +1520 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +1300 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ |
| RTTY-U | H 170 Hz H 425 Hz H 850 Hz L 170 Hz L 425 Hz L 850 Hz | $\begin{aligned} & +800 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +600 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +450 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +1640 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +1520 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & +1300 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ |
| PKT-L | $\begin{aligned} & 1170 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 1700 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 2125 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 2210 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{r} +1850 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +1300 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +900 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ +800 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |
| PKT-F | 0 | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |
| USER |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Menu Selection Setting Table

| Func No. | Function | Setting Range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0-1 | Memory Group 1 Channels | 1 ~ 99 | 01~99 |
| 0-2 | Memory Group 2 Channels | 0 ~ 99 | OFF |
| 0-3 | Memory Group 3 Channels | $0 \sim 99$ | OFF |
| 0-4 | Memory Group 4 Channels | 0 ~ 99 | OFF |
| 0-5 | Memory Group 5 Channels | 0 ~ 99 | OFF |
| 0-6 | Quick Memory Channel Banks | 1~5 | 5 |
| 0-7 | - | - | - |
| 0-8 | [A B A Auto Channel Up | ON/OFF | OFF |
| 0-9 | EDSP | ON/OFF | ON |
| 1-0 | VFO-A \& VFO-B Dial Speed | 2/4 | 4 |
| 1-1 | Shuttle Jog Dial Speed | 1 mS ~ 100 mS | 50 mS |
| 1-2 | IF SHIFT/WIDTH Step Size | $10 / 20 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 10 Hz |
| 1-3 | Main VFO-A Tuning Step Size | $0.62(5) / 1.25 / 2.50 / 5.00 / 10.00 / 20.00 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 10.00 Hz |
| 1-4 | SUB VFO-B Tuning Step Size | 0.62(5)/1.25/2.50/5.00/10.00/20.00 Hz | 10.00 Hz |
| 1-5 | Channel Step Size | $1 \sim 100 \mathrm{kHz}$ | 10 kHz |
| 1-6 | Quick Split Offset | ( $\pm$ ) $1 \sim 100 \mathrm{kHz}$ | 5 kHz |
| 1-7 | Automatic Selection of the AGC Decay Time | ON/OFF | OFF |
| 1-8 | CLAR M-Tune Function | ON/OFF | ON |
| 1-9 | CLAR Tuning Step Size | 0.62(5)/1.25/2.50/5.00/10.00/20.00 Hz | 10.00 Hz |
| 2-0 | Scan Pause | ON/OFF | ON |
| 2-1 | Scan Resume Mode | CAR STOP/CAR TIME/CAR SLOW | CAR STOP |
| 2-2 | - | - | - |
| 2-3 | Memory Scan Speed (Dwell Time) | 100 mS ~ 1000 mS (1S) | 200 mS |
| 2-4 | VFO Scan Speed (Dwell Time) | 1 mS ~ 100 mS | 10 mS |
| 2-5 | Auto Memory Write | OFF/GROUP 1/ GROUPS ALL | OFF |
| 2-6 | Memory Scan Skip | OFF/OFF | OFF |
| 2-7 | Scan Delay Time | 1S ~ 10 S | 5 S |
| 2-8 | Noise Blanker | A1 ~ A15 \& B1 ~ B15 | A12 |
| 2-9 | NOTCH Mode | IF NOTCH/AUTO DSP/SELECT | IF NOTCH |
| 3-0 | Frequency Display | OFFSET/CARRIER | OFFSET |
| 3-1 | Display Resolution | $10 \mathrm{~Hz} / 100 \mathrm{~Hz} / 1000 \mathrm{~Hz}(1 \mathrm{kHz})$ | 10 Hz |
| 3-2 | ETS (Enchanced Tuning Scale) | CLAR/DIAL | CLAR |
| 3-3 | Transverter Frequency Display | OFF/50/144/430 | OFF |
| 3-4 | Dimmer (Display Brightness) | LOW/HI | HI |
| 3-5 | Panel Display Mode | CLAR/CH FREQ/OFFSET/CW PITCH | CLAR |
| 3-6 | SUB VFO-B S-Meter | ON/OFF | ON |
| 3-7 | MAIN VFO-A Meter Peak-Hold | OFF/10 mS ~ 2000 mS (2S) | OFF |
| 3-8 | SUB VFO-B Meter Peak-Hold | OFF/10 mS ~ 2000 mS (2S) | OFF |
| 3-9 | - | - | - |
| 4-0 | RF Output Power (Limit) | 200/75/10 W | 200 W |
| 4-1 | Key \& Panel Beeper | ON/OFF | ON |

Menu Selection Setting Table (Cont.)

| Func No. | Function | Setting Range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4-2 | Key \& Panel Beep Pitch | 220 Hz ~ 7040 Hz or BEEP TUN ON/OFF | 880 Hz |
| 4-3 | Tuning Drive (Auto Power-Down) | 10/75/200 W | 75 W |
| 4-4 | TX Audio EDSP | OFF/1/2/3/4 | OFF |
| 4-5 | - | - | - |
| 4-6 | DVS RX Recording | MAIN VFO-A/SUB VFO-B | MAIN VFO-A |
| 4-7 | DVS PTT Control | ON/OFF | ON |
| 4-8 | Headphone Audio | MONO/STEREO 1/STEREO 2 | STEREO 1 |
| 4-9 | AF GAIN Balance Control | SEPARATE/BALANCE | SEPARATE |
| 5-0 | SSB Normal Filter | 8.2/455/8.2-455/OFF | OFF |
| 5-1 | 2nd IF (8.2 MHz) 2.0 kHz Filter | ON/OFF | OFF |
| 5-2 | CW Narrow Filter | 8.2/455/8.2-455 | 8.2-455 |
| 5-3 | 2nd IF (8.2 MHz) 250 Hz Filter | ON/OFF | OFF |
| 5-4 | DATA Narrow Filter | 8.2/455/8.2-455 | 8.2-455 |
| 5-5 | 3rd IF ( 455 kHz ) 2.0 kHz Filter | ON/OFF | OFF |
| 5-6 | 3rd IF ( 455 kHz ) 500 kHz Filter | ON/OFF | OFF |
| 5-7 | 3rd IF ( 455 kHz ) 250 kHz Filter | ON/OFF | OFF |
| 5-8 | SUB VFO-B RX Filter | ON/OFF | OFF |
| 5-9 | TX EDSP Filter | $6.0 \mathrm{kHz} / 2.4 \mathrm{kHz}$ | 6.0 kHz |
| 6-0 | RTTY Shift | 170/425/850 Hz | 170 Hz |
| 6-1 | RTTY Polarity | NORMAL/REVERSE | NORMAL |
| 6-2 | RTTY Tone Pair | HIGH TONE/LOW TONE | HIGH TONE |
| 6-3 | RTTY Frequency Display | CARRIER/OFFSET | OFFSET |
| 6-4 | Packet Frequency Display | $\pm 3.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ | -2.125 kHz |
| 6-5 | Packet Tone Frequency | $1170 \mathrm{~Hz} / 1700 \mathrm{~Hz} / 2125 \mathrm{~Hz} / 2210 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 2125 Hz |
| 6-6 | - | - | - |
| 6-7 | CTCSS Tone Select | $67.0 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 250.3 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 88.5 Hz |
| 6-8 | Tone Mode | CONTINUOUS/BURST | CONTINUOUS |
| 6-9 | Repeater Shift (TX OFFSET) | $0 \sim 200 \mathrm{kHz}$ | 100 kHz |
| 7-0 | Electronic Keyer Mode | IAMBIC 1/BUG/IAMBIC 2 | IAMBIC 1 |
| 7-1 | Keyer Dot Weighting | $0(1: 0.5) \sim 127(1: 2.0)$ | 10 (1:1.0) |
| 7-2 | Keyer Dash Weighting | $0(1: 2.0) \sim 127(1: 4.5)$ | 30 (1:3.0) |
| 7-3 | Keyer Contest Number | 0000 ~ 9999 | 0000 |
| 7-4 | Keyer Break-in Time | 0 mS ~ 30 mS | 5 mS |
| 7-5 | Keyer Delay Time | $0.00 \mathrm{~S} \sim 5.10 \mathrm{~S}$ | 0.00 S |
| 7-6 | CW Playback Style | - | - |
| 7-7 | EDSP Modulation \& Demodulation | SSB (RX): $100-3100 \mathrm{~Hz} / 300-2800 \mathrm{~Hz} /$ <br>  OFF <br> SSB (TX): $100-3100 \mathrm{~Hz} / 150-3100 \mathrm{~Hz} /$ <br>  $200-3100 \mathrm{~Hz} / 300-3100 \mathrm{~Hz} /$ <br>  OFF <br> $\mathrm{CW}(\mathrm{RX})$ $100-3100 \mathrm{~Hz} / \mathrm{OFF}$ <br> AM (RX) $70-3800 \mathrm{~Hz} / \mathrm{OFF}$ | OFF <br> OFF <br> OFF <br> OFF |
| 7-8 | Sub Receiver | ON/OFF ON |  |
| 7-9 | Remote Control Function | KEYER/FRONT KEY/VFO-A/VFO-B | KEYER |

Menu Selection Setting Table (Cont.)

| Func No. | Function | Setting Range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8-0 | [FAST] key Operation | CONTINUOUS/TOGGLE | TOGGLE |
| 8-1 | LOCK Selection | DIAL/PANEL/PRIMARY | DIAL |
| 8-2 | Split Operation | NORM/AUTO/A=B | NORM |
| 8-3 | Power Amplifier | ON/OFF | ON |
| 8-4 | Frontend RF AMP Selection | TUNED/FLAT | FLAT |
| 8-5 | [ANT] Key Function | AUTO/ON/OFF | AUTO |
| 8-6 | USER Setting MODE <br> Display Offset <br> Receiver PLL Receiver Carrier Transmit PLL Transmit Carrier <br> RTTY Offset Easy Set | LSB/USB/CW(L\&U)/RTTY(L\&U)/PKT <br> $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> $450.000 \mathrm{kHz} \sim 460.00 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> LSB: $456.300 \mathrm{kHz} \sim 460.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> USB: $450.000 \mathrm{kHz} \sim 453.700 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> PKT: $450.000 \mathrm{kHz} \sim 453.700 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> or $456.300 \mathrm{kHz} \sim 460.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> all otherts: $450.000 \sim 460.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> $\pm 5.000 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> OFF/SSTV/FAX/PSK-31*1 | LSB <br> See Table Below See Table Below See Table Below See Table Below See Table Below <br> See Table Below OFF |
| 8-7 | SUB RX AGC | AUTO/SLOW/FAST | AUTO |
| 8-8 | TUNER | ON/OFF | ON |
| 8-9 | Carrier Offset RX LSB Carrier TX LSB Carrier PROC. LSB Carrier RX USB Carrier TX USB Carrier PROC. USB Carrier TX AM Carrier | $-0.200 \mathrm{kHz} \sim+0.500 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> $-0.200 \mathrm{kHz} \sim+0.500 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> $-0.200 \mathrm{kHz} \sim+0.500 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> $-0.200 \mathrm{kHz} \sim+0.500 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> $-0.200 \mathrm{kHz} \sim+0.500 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> $-0.200 \mathrm{kHz} \sim+0.500 \mathrm{kHz}$ <br> $-0.200 \mathrm{kHz} \sim+0.500 \mathrm{kHz}$ | 0.000 kHz <br> 0.000 kHz <br> 0.000 kHz <br> 0.000 kHz <br> 0.000 kHz <br> 0.000 kHz <br> 0.000 kHz |
| *1: See Table on Next Page |  |  |  |

Default USER Function Settings

|  | LSB | USB | CW (USB) | CW (LSB) | RTTY (LSB) | RTTY (USB) | PKT (LSB) |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| Display Offset | 0.000 kHz | 0.000 kHz | 0.600 kHz | -0.600 kHz | -2.125 kHz | 2.125 kHz | -2.125 kHz |
| Receiver PLL | -1.450 kHz | 1.450 kHz | 0.600 kHz | -0.600 kHz | -2.210 kHz | 2.210 kHz | -2.210 kHz |
| Receiver Carrier | 456.450 kHz | 453.550 kHz | 454.400 kHz | 455.600 kHz | 457.210 kHz | 452.790 kHz | 457.120 kHz |
| Transmit PLL | -1.500 kHz | 1.500 kHz | 0.600 kHz | -0.600 kHz | -2.125 kHz | 2.125 kHz | -2.120 kHz |
| Transmit Carrier | 456.500 kHz | 453.500 kHz | 455.000 kHz | 455.000 kHz | 455.000 kHz | 455.000 kHz | 457.120 kHz |
| RTTY Offset | 0.000 kHz | 0.000 kHz | 0.000 kHz | 0.000 kHz | -0.170 kHz | 0.170 kHz | 0.000 kHz |

## Menu Selection and Settings

## Easy Set Mode Settings

| Easy Set | Mode | Display Offset | RX PLL | RX Carrier | TX PLL | TX Carrier |
| :---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| SStv-L | PKT-L | 0.000 kHz | -1.750 kHz | 456.750 kHz | -1.750 kHz | 456.750 kHz |
| SStv-U | PKT-L | 0.000 kHz | 1.750 kHz | 453.250 kHz | 1.750 kHz | 453.250 kHz |
| FAcS-L | PKT-L | 0.000 kHz | -1.900 kHz | 456.900 kHz | -1.900 kHz | 456.900 kHz |
| FAcS-U | PKT-L | 0.000 kHz | 1.900 kHz | 453.100 kHz | 1.900 kHz | 453.100 kHz |
| PS31-L | PKT-L | -1.000 kHz | -1.000 kHz | 456.000 kHz | -1.500 kHz | 456.500 kHz |
| PS31-U | PKT-L | 1.000 kHz | 1.000 kHz | 454.000 kHz | 1.500 kHz | 453.500 kHz |
| PS31-SL | LSB | -1.000 kHz | -1.450 kHz | 456.450 kHz | -1.500 kHz | 456.500 kHz |
| PS31-SU | USB | 1.000 kHz | 1.450 kHz | 453.550 kHz | 1.500 kHz | 453.500 kHz |

## Installing Internal Accessories

This section contains the installation procedures for installable options available for theMARK-V FT-1000MP. A complete list of options and their corresponding Yaesu $P / N$ is provided on pages 5 and 6 of this manual. Please check with your dealer for pricing and availability.


Figure 1


Figure 2

## TCXO UNIT

The Temperature-Compensated Crystal Oscillator is the heart of the master reference oscillator used throughout the transceiver. An optional TCXO unit is available for installation into the MARK-V FT-1000MP. The $\pm 0.25-\mathrm{ppm}$ TCXO-6 replaces the factory-installed TCXO unit, and it provides enhanced frequency stability compared to the standard $\pm 0.5$-ppm module.

If you also have the optional YF-115C Sub Receiver filter, now would be a good time to install it, as its mounting position is also exposed during the TCXO installation procedures.

## TCXO-6 Installation

$\square$ Disconnect all cables from the transceiver.
$\square$ Referring to Figure 1, remove the four screws ( $\Rightarrow$ ) on each side of the transceiver, and the seven screws $(\rightarrow)$ from the bottom of the transceiver, then lift off the bottom cover.
$\square$ Referring to Figure 2, remove the six screws ( $\Rightarrow$ ) from the top panel. Pry the top cover open and disconnect the speaker cable from the speaker, then lift off the top and side covers.
$\square$ Locate the factory-installed TCXO UNIT in the front right corner of the chassis (see drawing below), and remove the wiring connector from the board. Use a small screwdriver to pry up the rear edge of the connector, and avoid pulling on the wires.
$\square$ Remove the four screws at the corners of the board, and remove the factory-installed TCXO UNIT.
$\square$ Position the new TCXO-6 in place, and use the same screws just removed to affix the new board in place.
$\square$ Reinstall the wiring connector.
This completes the installation; connect the speaker cable to the speaker on the top cover, then replace the all covers and screws removed above (unless installing other options now).

TCXO-6 Mounting Location
(Replace with the factory-installed TCXO Unit)


# Installing Internal Accessories 

## Main Receiver 2nd and 3rd IF Filters

A total of 5 optional crystal IF filter units can be installed in addition to the factory-installed filters (see the table). Contact your dealer for pricing, availability and ordering. These filters include small boards with connectors, so no soldering is necessary for their installation.

Important! After filter installation, front-panel selection is not possible until individual filters are enabled via menu programming (menus selection 5-0 ~ 5-8). Refer to the Menu Programming chapter and enable the optional filters after installing them.

## Filter Installation

$\square$ Disconnect all cables from the transceiver.
$\square$ Referring to Figure 1, remove the four screws ( $\Rightarrow$ ) on each side of the transceiver, and the seven screws $(\rightarrow)$ from the bottom of the transceiver, then lift off the bottom cover.
$\square$ Referring to Figure 2, remove the six screws ( $\Rightarrow$ ) from the top panel. Pry the top cover open and disconnect the speaker cable from the speaker, then lift off the top and side covers.
$\square$ On the underside of the transceiver chassis, locate the IF UNIT. Referring to the drowing below, determine the location of the filter(s) you are installing.

- Position each filter so that its connectors are aligned with the mounting pins on the board, and push it into place, so the nylon mounting tabs "mushroom" through the holes and lock the unit in place.
$\square$ Connect the speaker cable to the speaker on the top cover, then replace the all covers and screws (unless installing other options now). Refer to pages 101 and 102 of the Menu Programming chapter to enable newly-installed filters.


## Sub Receiver CW Narrow Filter

The optional YF-115C Collins mechanical filter ( 500 Hz BW ) is available for the $455-\mathrm{kHz}$ Sub Receiver 3rd IF for enhanced reception. Only top cover removal is required for installation.

## Installation

- Disconnect all cables from the transceiver.
$\square$ Referring to Figure 1, remove the four screws ( $\Rightarrow$ ) on each side of the transceiver, and the seven screws $(\rightarrow)$ from the bottom of the transceiver, then lift off the bottom cover.
$\square$ Referring to Figure 2, remove the six screws ( $\Delta$ ) from the top panel. Pry the top cover open and disconnect the speaker cable from the speaker, then lift off the top and side covers.
$\square$ Locate the SUB RX Unit on the right side of the set.
$\square$ Referring to the photograph on page 112, determine the location of the Sub Rx filter you are installing.
- Position the filter so that its connectors are aligned with the mounting pins on the board, and push it into place, so the nylon mounting tabs "mushroom" through the hole and lock the unit in place.
- Connect the speaker cable to the speaker on the top cover, then replace the all covers and screws, unless installing the YF-115C options now. Refer to the Menu Programming chapter to enable the newlyinstalled filter (menu selection 5-8).

| Optional IF Filter Units |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{8 . 2 ~ M H z ~ 2 n d ~ I F ~}$ |  | $\mathbf{4 5 5} \mathbf{~ k H z}$ 3rd IF |  |
| Yaesu P/N | B/W | Yaesu P/N | B/W |
| YF-114SN | 2.0 kHz | YF-110SN | 2.0 kHz |
| YF-114CN | 250 Hz | YF-115C* | 500 Hz |
| - | - | YF-110CN | 250 Hz |
| ※: Collins Mechanical Filter |  |  |  |



## Lithium Battery Replacement

A 3-V Type CR2032 Lithium Battery (BT5001) is located on the CNTL UNIT board (underside) of the transceiver. This maintains the memorized data in your radio. Battery life is normally greater than five years, however, should replacement be needed, perform the following steps:

With the top and bottom covers removed, note the location of the battery. Using your finger, slide the battery inward (you will feel slight pressure by the mounting spring), then slightly pry it up and outward so that it ejects freely through the slots in the battery holder.

Carefully note battery polarity with the positive (+) side facing upward, and battery-type information. Install the replacement battery in the reverse manner.


## Memory Back-Up Switch

The rear panel memory BACKUP switch is normally kept in the "ON" position to ensure your memorized data is maintained (by a small amount of power from the lithium battery) when the radio is off, or the DC power source is removed.

O If you do not plan to operate your radio for extended periods of time, slide this switch to the "OFF" position to conserve battery life.
O Ensure the radio is on when sliding the switch back to the "ON" position, as this reduces the initial current demand on the battery by the radio's circuits from an un-powered state.

Note: Memorized settings are lost and the radio returns to factory default settings when turning off the backup battery.

## CAUTION

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

The rear panel $\mathbf{+ 1 3 . 8} \mathbf{V}$ jack provides regulated, separately fused 13.8 VDC at up to 200 mA , to power external low-current devices. If your device requires more current, use a separate power source. In the event the internal fuse blows, it can be replaced. However, this requires moderate transceiver disassembly.
$\square$ With the top cover removed, locate the two screws mounting the fan assembly to the PA Unit heat sink.
$\square$ Remove the screws and move the fan assembly to one side.
$\square$ Remove the remaining four heat sink screws and lift the PA assembly from the chassis. You will need to unplug the mini coax (with the yellow band) from the RX ANT IN connector on the BPF UNIT.
$\square$ Remove the four screws from the PA Unit mount, and remove the mount to expose the BPF UNIT, and fuse labeled FH1001 (below).
$\square$ Using a pair of fuse pullers, remove the blown fuse and replace only with a similar fast-blow type fuse ( 0.5 A maximum).

- Reassemble the PA UNIT mount, yellow-banded coax cable, PA UNIT, and fan assembly in reverse order, then replace the top cover.



## Power-on Microprocessor Reset Procedures

Some or all transceiver settings can be reset to their factory-default states using one of the following power-on routines:
$\square[29(0)]+$ POWER on: Resets all menu setting to factory-default.
$\square$ [SUB(CE)] + [ENT] + POWER on: Resets all memories (except menu setting) to factory-default.
$\square[\operatorname{SUB}(C E)]+[\mathbf{2 9 ( 0 )}]+[E N T]+$ POWER on: CPU master reset for all memories and menu setting.

Copyright 2001
VERTEX STANDARD CO., LTD.
All rights reserved.
No portion of this manual
may be reproduced without
the permission of
VERTEX STANDARD CO., LTD.


[^0]:    VERTEX STANDARD CO., LTD.
    4-8-8 Nakameguro, Meguro-Ku, Tokyo 153-8644, Japan
    VERTEX STANDARD
    US Headquarters
    17210 Edwards Rd., Cerritos, CA 90703, U.S.A.
    International Division
    8350 N.W. 52nd Terrace, Suite 201, Miami, FL 33166, U.S.A.
    YAESU EUROPE B.V.
    P.O. Box 75525, 1118 ZN Schiphol, The Netherlands

    YAESU UK LTD.
    Unit 12, Sun Valley Business Park, Winnall Close Winchester, Hampshire, SO23 OLB, U.K.
    VERTEX STANDARD HK LTD.
    Unit 5, 20/F., Seaview Centre, 139-141 Hoi Bun Road, Kwun Tong, Kowloon, Hong Kong

